# Table of Contents


**Introduction** 4

**Instrument Cluster** 10

Warning lights and chimes 10
Gauges 14

**Entertainment Systems** 16

How to get going 16
AM/FM stereo with CD 20
AM/FM stereo with in-dash six CD 28
Auxiliary input jack (Line in) 36
USB port 37
Satellite radio information 41
Navigation system 43
SYNC 43

**Climate Controls** 44

Manual heating and air conditioning 44
Automatic temperature control 46
Rear window defroster 51

**Lights** 52

Headlamps 52
Turn signal control 56
Bulb replacement 57

**Driver Controls** 68

Windshield wiper/washer control 68
Steering wheel adjustment 69
Power windows 72
Mirrors 74
Speed control 75
Moon roof 80
Message center 85

## Table of Contents


**Locks and Security** 95

Keys 95
Locks 97
Anti-theft system 110

**Seating and Safety Restraints** 116

Seating 116
Safety restraints 125
Airbags 139
Child restraints 154

**Tires, Wheels and Loading** 170

Tire information 170
Tire inflation 172
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) 185
Vehicle loading 191
Trailer towing 195
Recreational towing 195

**Driving** 197

Starting 197
Brakes 202
AdvanceTrac® 204
Traction Control™ 208
Transmission operation 210
Reverse sensing system 217

**Roadside Emergencies** 225

Getting roadside assistance 225
Hazard flasher switch 226
Fuel pump shut-off switch 227
Fuses and relays 227
Changing tires 234
Wheel lug nut torque 239
Jump starting 240
Wrecker towing 246

# Table of Contents


**Customer Assistance** 248

Reporting safety defects (U.S. only) 254
Reporting safety defects (Canada only) 255

**Cleaning** 256

**Maintenance and Specifications** 264

Engine compartment 266
Engine oil 269
Battery 274
Engine coolant 276
Fuel information 283
Air filter(s) 300
Part numbers 302
Maintenance product specifications and capacities 303
Engine data 306

**Accessories** 309

**Index** 311



All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2008 Ford Motor Company

# Introduction

## CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Mercury. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: www.ford.com
- In Canada: www.ford.ca
- In Mexico: www.ford.com.mx
- In Australia: www.ford.com.au

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This *Owner's Guide* describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on the *Owner's Guide* when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

**WARNING: Fuel pump shut-off switch:** In the event of an accident the safety switch will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. The switch can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To reset the switch, refer to the *Fuel pump shut-off switch* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

## SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION

### Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

### Warning symbols on your vehicle

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

### Protecting the environment

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.

**CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning**

**WARNING:** Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

### PERCHLORATE MATERIAL

Certain components of this vehicle such as airbag modules, seat belt pretensioners, and button cell batteries may contain Perchlorate Material – Special handling may apply for service or vehicle end of life disposal. See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate.

### BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

# Introduction

## SPECIAL NOTICES

### New Vehicle Limited Warranty

For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered by your vehicle's New Vehicle Limited Warranty, refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* that is provided to you along with your *Owner's Guide*.

### Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

**WARNING:** Please read the section *Airbag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

**WARNING:** Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger airbag.

### Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle.

#### *Event Data Recording*

Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:

- how various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;
- how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;

- how fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

### Cell phone use

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

### Export unique (Non–United States/Canada) vehicle specific information

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the ones that are described in this *Owner's Guide*. A market unique supplement may be supplied that complements this book. By referring to the market unique supplement, if provided, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. This *Owner's Guide* is written primarily for the U.S. and Canadian Markets. Features or equipment listed as standard may be different on units built for Export. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

## Introduction

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

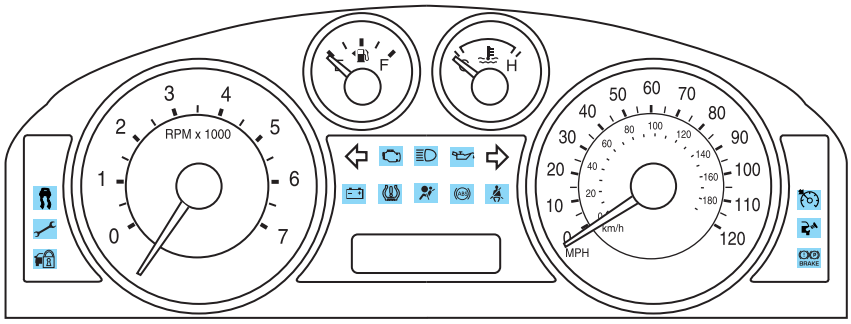
**Vehicle Symbol Glossary**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Safety Alert | | See Owner's Guide | |
| Fasten Safety Belt | | Airbag - Front | |
| Airbag - Side | | Child Seat Lower Anchor | |
| Child Seat Tether Anchor | | Brake System | |
| Anti-Lock Brake System | | Parking Brake System | |
| Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based | | Parking Aid System | |
| Stability Control System | | Speed Control | |
| Master Lighting Switch | | Hazard Warning Flasher | |
| Fog Lamps-Front | | Fuse Compartment | |
| Fuel Pump Reset | | Windshield Wash/Wipe | |
| Windshield Defrost/Demist | | Rear Window Defrost/Demist | |

**Vehicle Symbol Glossary**

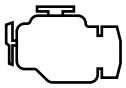
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Power Windows Front/Rear | | Power Window Lockout | |
| Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock | | Interior Luggage Compartment Release | |
| Panic Alarm | | Engine Oil | |
| Engine Coolant | | Engine Coolant Temperature | |
| Do Not Open When Hot | | Battery | |
| Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks | | Battery Acid | |
| Explosive Gas | | Fan Warning | |
| Power Steering Fluid | | Maintain Correct Fluid Level | |
| Service Engine Soon | | Engine Air Filter | |
| Passenger Compartment Air Filter | | Jack | |
| Check Fuel Cap | | Low Tire Pressure Warning | |

## WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES




Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause extensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions. Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulbs work. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, refer to the respective system warning light for additional information.

**Service engine soon:** The *Service engine soon* indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the on position to check the bulb and to indicate whether the vehicle is ready for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing. Normally, the ″Service engine soon″ light will stay on until the engine is cranked, then turn itself off if no malfunctions are present. However, if after 15 seconds the ″Service engine soon″ light blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. See the *Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.



Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately by your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

**Check fuel cap:** Illuminates when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this light on may cause the Service engine soon warning light to come on, refer to *Fuel filler cap* in the *Maintenance and Specification* chapter.

**Brake system warning light:** To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the on position when the engine is not running, or in a position between on and start, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the on position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your authorized dealer. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system malfunction and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your authorized dealer.

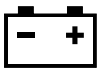
**WARNING:** Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your authorized dealer. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.

**Anti-lock brake system:** If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.

**Airbag readiness:** If this light fails to illuminate when the ignition is turned to on, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately by your authorized dealer. A chime will also sound when a malfunction in the supplemental restraint system has been detected.

**Safety belt:** Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A Belt-Minder® chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt. Refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter to activate/deactivate the Belt-Minder® chime feature.

**Charging system:** Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly.

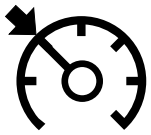


**Engine oil pressure:** Illuminates when the oil pressure falls below the normal range, refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**AdvanceTrac®/Traction Control™ (if equipped):** Illuminates when the AdvanceTrac®/Traction Control™ is active. If the light remains on, have the system serviced immediately, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

**Low tire pressure warning (if equipped with the Tire Pressure Monitoring System):** Illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If the light remains on at start up or while driving, the tire pressure should be checked. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. When the ignition is first turned to on, the light will illuminate for three seconds to ensure the bulb is working. If the light does not turn on or begins to flash, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. For more information on this system, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**Speed control:** Illuminates when the speed control is engaged. Turns off when the speed control system is disengaged.



**Anti-theft system:** Flashes when the SecuriLock™ Passive Anti-theft System has been activated.

**Throttle Control/Transmission:** Illuminates when a powertrain or a AWD fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**Turn signal:** Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

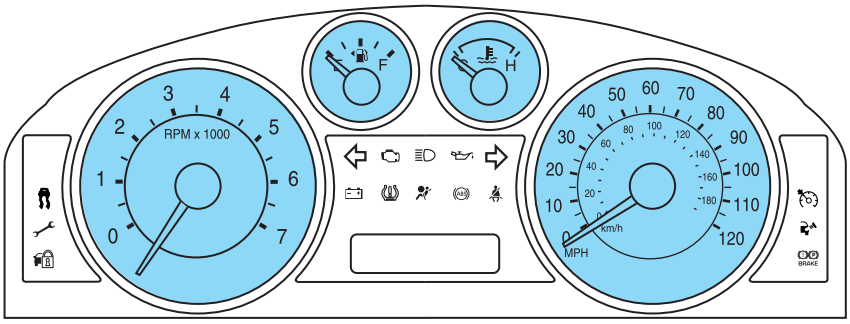
**High beams:** Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.

**Key-in-ignition warning chime:** Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the off or accessory position and the driver's door is opened.

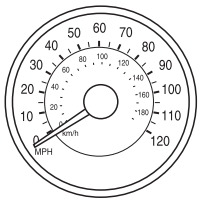
**Headlamps on warning chime:** Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

**Parking brake on:** Sounds when the parking brake is left on and driven. If the warning stays on after the park brake is off, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

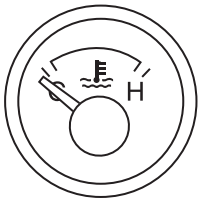
## GAUGES




**Speedometer:** Indicates the current vehicle speed.

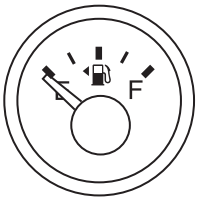



**Engine coolant temperature gauge:** Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between "H" and "C"). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**




**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

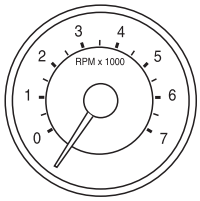
**Fuel gauge:** Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the on position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade.




The FUEL icon and arrow indicates which side of the vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.

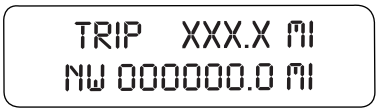
**Tachometer:** Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.




**Odometer:** Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle.

Refer to *Message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter on how to switch the display from Metric to English.

**Trip odometer:** Registers the miles (kilometers) of individual journeys. Press and release the message center INFO button until “TRIP” appears in the display (this represents the trip mode). Press the control again to select Trip A and Trip B features. Press and hold the RESET button for two seconds to reset.



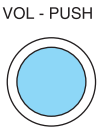
## AUDIO SYSTEMS

### Quick start — How to get going

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The drivers primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

#### *Listening to the radio*

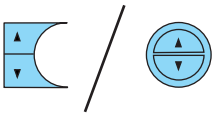
1. If the audio system is off, press VOL-PUSH to turn the radio on. Turn VOL-PUSH to adjust the volume.



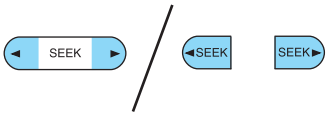

**Note:** The system may take a few moments to turn on.

2. Press AM/FM repeatedly to choose between AM/FM1/FM2 frequency bands.

3. Press ▲ /▼ to manually go up/down the frequency band.



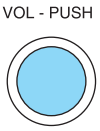
Press ◀ SEEK ▶ to search down/up the chosen frequency band for the next strongest station. To disengage SEEK mode, press ▲ /▼ .




4. Once you are tuned to the desired station, press and hold a memory preset (1–6) to save the station. PRESET SAVED will appear on the display and the sound will return signifying the station has been saved. You can save up to six stations in each frequency band — six in AM, six in FM1 and six in FM2. To access your saved stations, press the corresponding memory preset. The memory preset # and the station frequency will appear on the display.

### *Listening to satellite radio (if equipped)*

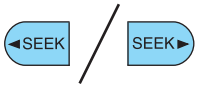
1. If the audio system is turned off, press VOL-PUSH to turn the radio on. Turn VOL-PUSH to adjust the volume.




**Note:** The system may take a few moments to turn on.

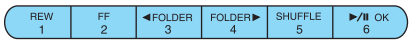
2. Press AUX repeatedly to cycle through auxiliary audio sources. Select SAT1, SAT2 or SAT3 to listen to satellite radio.

3. Press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to access the previous or next satellite channel.




You may also seek by music category. For further information, refer to *CATEGORY* listing under the MENU control on your specific audio system.

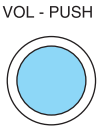
4. Once you are tuned to the desired channel, press and hold a memory preset (1–6) to save the channel. PRESET SAVED will appear on the display and the sound will return signifying the station has been saved. You can save up to six channels in each — six in SAT1, six in SAT2, and six in SAT3.




To access your saved channels, press the corresponding memory preset. The memory preset # and the channel name will appear on the display.

### *Listening to a CD/MP3 (if equipped)*

1. If the audio system is turned off, press VOL-PUSH to turn the radio on. Turn VOL-PUSH to adjust the volume.




**Note:** The system may take a few moments to turn on.

2. Press CD to enter CD mode. If a disc is already loaded into the system, CD play will begin where it ended last.

**For a single CD system,** if a disc is not already loaded, insert only one, label side up into the CD slot. LOADING CD and READING DISC will appear in the display. The first track on the disc will begin playing.

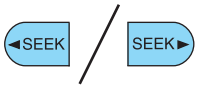
**For an in-dash six CD system,** if a disc is not already loaded, press LOAD. Select a slot number using memory presets 1–6. When the display reads LOAD CD#, load the desired disc, label side up. If you do not choose a slot within five seconds, the system will choose for you. Once loaded, the first track will begin to play.

**To auto load up to 6 discs,** press and hold LOAD until the display reads AUTOLOAD#. Load the desired disc, label side up. The system will prompt you to load discs for the remaining available slots. Insert the discs, one at a time, label side up, when prompted. Once loaded, the last loaded disc will begin to play.

**Note:** An MP3 disc with folders will show F001 (folder #) T001 (track #) in the display. An MP3 disc without folders will show T001 (track#) in the display. Refer to *MP3 track and folder structure* later in this chapter for further information.

3. In CD/MP3 mode, you can access the following features:

Press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to access the previous/next tracks.




Press and hold REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.

Press and hold FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.

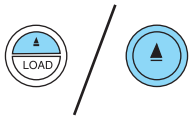
While in folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.

While in folder mode, press FOLDER ▶ to access the next folder on MP3 discs, if available.

Press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display.
To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.

**Note:** In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the *current* folder.

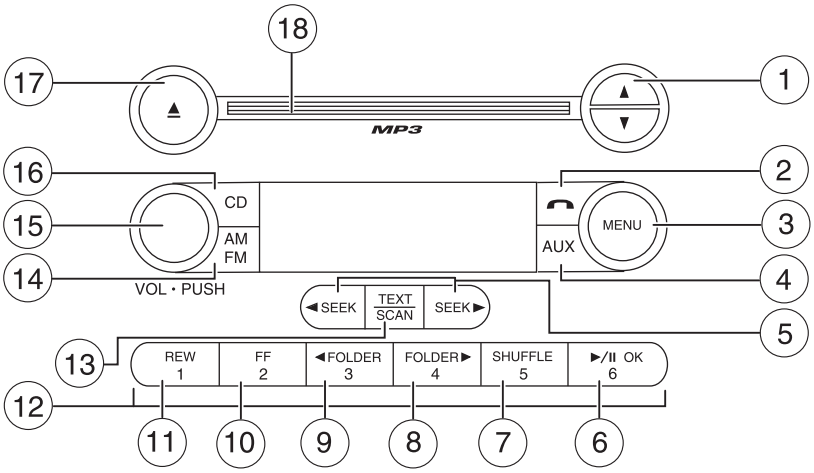
Press ▶ / ❙❙ (play/pause) when a CD/MP3 is playing to pause the disc. CD PAUSE will appear in the display. Press again to resume play.




4. **For a single CD system,** press ⏏ to eject the current disc. The display will read CD EJECT.

**For an in-dash six CD system,** press ⏏ and then select the correct slot number using memory presets 1–6. When ready, the system will eject the disc and the display will read REMOVE CD. If the disc is not removed in 15 seconds, the system will reload the disc.
**To auto eject up to 6 discs,** press and hold ⏏ until the system begins ejecting all loaded discs. If the discs are not removed, the system will reload the discs.

### AM/FM single CD/MP3 satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)




**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window switches, radio and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ **(Tuner):** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Also use in menu mode to select various settings.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.
**In CATEGORY MODE,** press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.). Refer to *Category* under *Menu* for further information.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

2. **(Phone):** If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, press to access SYNC PHONE features. Refer to your *SYNC supplement* for further information.

If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC, the display will read NO PHONE.

3. **MENU:** Press repeatedly to access the following settings:

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song's title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save more than 20 titles, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved titles and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved titles. When the song title appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.

- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.
  **Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all song's from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.
  **Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**Setting the clock:** Your vehicle is equipped with an in-dash clock. Refer to *Clock* in the *Driver Controls* Chapter for instructions on how to set the time.

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to turn on/off.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**RBDS:** Available only in FM mode. This feature allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: CLASSIC, COUNTRY, INFORM, JAZZ/RB, ROCK, etc.

**To activate,** press MENU repeatedly until RBDS (ON/OFF) appears in the display. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to toggle RBDS ON/OFF. When RBDS is OFF, you will not be able to search for RBDS equipped stations or view the station name or type. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**To search for specific RBDS music categories:** When the desired category appears in the display, press ▲ / ▼ to find the desired type, then press and release ◀ SEEK ▶ or press and hold SCAN to begin the search.

**To view the station name or type:** When the desired category appears in the display, press TEXT/SCAN to toggle between displaying the station type (COUNTRY, ROCK, etc.) or the station name (WYCD, WXYZ, etc.).

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**BAL (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**FADE:** Press MENU to reach the fade setting.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

The default setting is *off;* increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust *1–7:* Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is *1–3;* SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode.
In track mode, press ◀ SEEK ▶ to scroll through all tracks on the disc
In folder mode, press ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to scroll through tracks within the selected folder.
Press ◀ FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).
Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

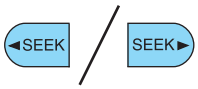
**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display.
Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode), SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped), and SYNC (if equipped).

For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, please refer to the *SYNC supplement* for further information.

5. **SEEK:In radio mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next strong station.




**In CD mode,** press ◀ / ▶ to access the previous/next CD track.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ◀ SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

**In TEXT MODE,** press ◀ SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.
**In CATEGORY MODE,** press ◀ SEEK ▶ to select a category.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / ❙❙ **OK**:

**(Play/Pause):** Press to pause the CD that is playing. PAUSE will appear in the display. Press again to return to playback mode.

**OK:** Use in various menu selections. Your vehicle may be equipped with the SYNC system which has special phone and media features. For further information, refer to the *SYNC supplement.*

7. **SHUFFLE:**Press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display.

To disengage, press SHUFFLE. When SHUFFLE ON appears in the display, press ▲ / ▼ to select SHUFFLE OFF.

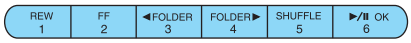
**Note:** In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER ▶** : In folder mode, press FOLDER ▶ to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.

9. ◀ **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.

10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.

11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.




12. **Memory presets:** To set a station, select the desired frequency band, AM, FM1 or FM2. Tune to the desired station. Press and hold a preset button until sound returns and PRESET # SAVED appears in the display. You can save up to 18 stations, six in AM, six in FM1 and FM2.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

13. **TEXT/SCAN:In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.
**In MP3 mode,** press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS long channel name.

**In TEXT MODE:** Sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the ">" indicator is active, press SEEK ▶ to view the additional display text. When the "<" indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.

15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.

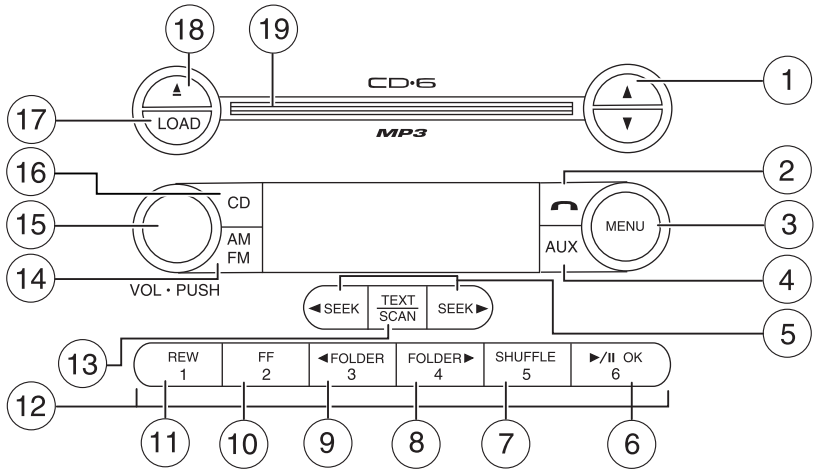
**Note:**If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last. If no CD is loaded, NO DISC will appear in the display.

17. ⏏ **(CD eject):** Press to eject a CD.

18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up into the CD slot.

### Premium/Audiophile AM/FM in-dash six CD/MP3 satellite compatible sound system (if equipped)




**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

**Accessory delay:** Your vehicle is equipped with accessory delay. With this feature, the window controls, radio and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition is turned off or until either front door is opened.

1. ▲ / ▼ **(Tune/Disc selector):**

**In radio mode,** press to manually go up (▲ ) or down (▼ ) the radio frequency. Press and hold for a fast advance through radio frequencies.
**In menu mode,** use to select various settings.
**In CD/MP3 mode,** press to select the desired disc.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ▲ / ▼ to tune to the next/previous channel.
**In CATEGORY MODE,** press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.). Refer to *Category Mode* under *Menu* for further information.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

2. **(Phone):** If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, press to access SYNC PHONE features. Refer to your *SYNC supplement* for further information.
If your vehicle is not equipped with SYNC, the display will read NO PHONE.

3. **MENU:** Press repeatedly to access the following settings:

**SATELLITE RADIO MENU (if equipped):** Press MENU when satellite radio mode is active to access. Press OK to enter into the satellite radio menu. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the following options:

- **CATEGORY:** Press OK to enter category mode. Press ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list of available SIRIUS channel Categories (Pop, Rock, News, etc.) Press OK when the desired category appears in the display. After a category is selected, press SEEK to search for that specific category of channels only (i.e. ROCK). You may also select CATEGORY ALL to seek all available SIRIUS categories and channels. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.
- **SAVE SONG:** Press OK to save the currently playing song's title in the system's memory. (If you try to save something other than a song, CANT SAVE will appear in the display.) When the chosen song is playing on any satellite radio channel, the system will alert you with an audible prompt. Press OK while SONG ALERT is in the display and the system will take you to the channel playing the desired song. You can save up to 20 song titles. If you attempt to save more than 20 titles, the display will read REPLACE SONG? Press OK to access the saved titles and press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved titles. When the song title appears in the display that you would like to replace, press OK. SONG REPLACED will appear in the display.

- **DELETE SONG:** Press OK to delete a song from the system's memory. Press ▲ / ▼ to cycle through the saved songs. When the song appears in the display that you would like to delete, press OK. The song will appear in the display for confirmation. Press OK again and the display will read SONG DELETED. If you do not want to delete the currently listed song, press ▲ / ▼ to select either RETURN or CANCEL.
  **Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **DELETE ALL SONGS:** Press OK to delete all song's from the system's memory. The display will read ARE YOU SURE ? Press OK to confirm deletion of all saved songs and the display will read ALL DELETED.
  **Note:** If there are no songs presently saved, the display will read NO SONGS.
- **ENABLE ALERTS / DISABLE ALERTS:** Press OK to enable/disable the satellite alert status which alerts you when your selected songs are playing on a satellite radio channel. (The system default is disabled.) SONG ALERTS ENABLED/DISABLED will appear in the display. The menu listing will display the opposite state. For example, if you have chosen to enable the song alerts, the menu listing will read DISABLE as the alerts are currently on, so your other option is to turn them off.

*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

**Setting the clock:** Your vehicle is equipped with an in-dash clock. Refer to *Clock* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for instructions on how to set the time.

**AUTOSET:** Press MENU until the display reads AUTOSET. Autoset allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◄ SEEK► to turn on/off.
When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**RBDS:** Available only in FM mode. This feature allows you to search RBDS-equipped stations for a certain category of music format: CLASSIC, COUNTRY, INFORM, JAZZ/RB, ROCK, etc.

**To activate,** press MENU repeatedly until RBDS (ON/OFF) appears in the display. Use ▲ / ▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to toggle RBDS ON/OFF. When RBDS is OFF, you will not be able to search for RBDS equipped stations or view the station name or type. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**To search for specific RBDS music categories:** When the desired category appears in the display, press ▲ / ▼ to find the desired type, then press and release ◀ SEEK ▶ or press and hold SCAN to begin the search.

**To view the station name or type:** When the desired category appears in the display, press TEXT/SCAN to toggle between displaying the station type (COUNTRY, ROCK, etc.) or the station name (WYCD, WXYZ, etc.).

**BASS:** Press MENU to reach the bass setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK▶ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**TREB (Treble):** Press MENU to reach the treble setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK▶ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**BAL (Balance):** Press MENU to reach the balance setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK▶ to adjust the audio between the left (L) and right (R) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**FADE:** Press MENU to reach the fade setting. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK▶ to adjust the audio between the back (B) and front (F) speakers. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**SPEEDVOL (Speed sensitive volume, if equipped):** Press MENU to reach the SPEEDVOL setting. Radio volume automatically gets louder with increasing vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK▶ to adjust. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

The default setting is *off;* increasing your vehicle speed will not change the volume level.

Adjust *1–7:* Increasing this setting from 1 (lowest setting) to 7 (highest setting) allows the radio volume to automatically change slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise.

Recommended level is *1–3;* SPEED OFF turns the feature off and level 7 is the maximum setting.

**Track/Folder mode:** Available only on MP3 discs in CD mode.
In track mode, press ◀ SEEK ▶ to scroll through all tracks on the disc
In folder mode, press ◀ SEEK ▶ to scroll through tracks within the selected folder.
Press ◀ FOLDER ▶ to access the previous/next folder (if available).
Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

**COMPRESS (Compression):** Available only in CD/MP3 mode. Press MENU until COMPRESS ON/OFF appears in the display. Use ▲ / ▼ or ◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ to toggle ON/OFF. When COMPRESS is ON, the system will bring the soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

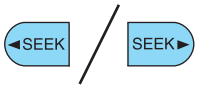
**ALL SEATS (Occupancy mode):** Available on Audiophile audios only. Use ▲ / ▼ / ◀ SEEK▶ to select and optimize sound for ALL SEATS, DRIVERS SEAT or REAR SEATS. Press OK to close and return to the main menu.

4. **AUX:** Press repeatedly to cycle through LINE IN (auxiliary audio mode), SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3 modes (satellite radio, if equipped), and SYNC (if equipped).

For location and further information on auxiliary audio mode, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* later in this chapter.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

If your vehicle is equipped with SYNC, please refer to the *SYNC supplement* for further information.

5. **Seek: In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press to access the previous ( ◀ ) or next ( ▶ ) strong station or track.




**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press ◀ SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel. If a specific category is selected, (Jazz, Rock, News, etc.), press ◀ SEEK ▶ to seek to the previous/next channel in the selected category. Press and hold ◀ SEEK ▶ to fast seek through the previous /next channels.

**In TEXT MODE,** press ◀ SEEK ▶ to view the previous/additional display text.
**In CATEGORY MODE,** press ◀ SEEK ▶ to select a category.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

6. ▶ / ❙❙ **OK:**

**(Play/Pause):** Press to pause the CD that is playing. PAUSE will appear in the display. Press again to return to playback mode.

**OK:** Use in various menu selections. Your vehicle may be equipped with the SYNC system which has special phone and media features. For further information, refer to the *SYNC supplement.*

7. **SHUFFLE:** Press SHUFFLE to engage shuffle mode. SHUFFLE ON will appear in the display. If you wish to engage shuffle mode right away, press SEEK to begin random play. Otherwise, random play will begin when the current track is finished playing. CD SHUF will appear in the display.

To disengage, press SHUFFLE again. SHUFFLE OFF will appear in the display.

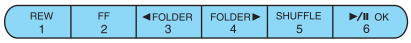
**Note:** In track mode, all tracks on the *current* disc will shuffle in random order. In MP3 folder mode, the system will randomly play all tracks within the current folder.

8. **FOLDER** ▶ : In folder mode, press FOLDER ▶ to access next folder on MP3 discs, if available.

9. ◀ **FOLDER:** In folder mode, press ◀ FOLDER to access the previous folder on MP3 discs, if available.

10. **FF (Fast forward):** Press FF to manually advance in a CD/MP3 track.

11. **REW (Rewind):** Press REW to manually reverse in a CD/MP3 track.




12. **Memory presets:** To set a station, select the desired frequency band, AM, FM1 or FM2. Tune to the desired station. Press and hold a preset button until sound returns and PRESET # SAVED appears in the display. You can save up to 18 stations, six in AM, six in FM1 and FM2.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** there are 18 available presets, six each for SAT1, SAT2 and SAT3. To save satellite channels in your memory presets, tune to the desired channel then press and hold a preset control until sound returns.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

13. **TEXT/SCAN: In radio and CD/MP3 mode,** press and hold for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.
**In MP3 mode,** press and release to display track title, artist name, and disc title.

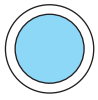
**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press and release to enter TEXT MODE and display the current song title. While in TEXT MODE, press again to scroll through the current song title, artist, channel category and the SIRIUS long channel name.

**In TEXT MODE:** Sometimes the display requires additional text to be displayed. When the ">" indicator is active, press SEEK ▶ to view the additional display text. When the "<" indicator is active, press ◀ SEEK to view the previous display text.

**In satellite radio mode (if equipped),** press and hold to hear a brief sampling of the next channels. Press again to stop. In CATEGORY MODE, press SCAN to hear a brief sampling of the channels in the selected category. Press again to stop.
*Satellite radio is available only with a valid SIRIUS radio subscription. Check with your authorized dealer for availability.*

14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM1/FM2 frequency band.

15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.




**Note:**If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a “nominal” listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD/MP3 mode. If a disc is already loaded into the system, CD/MP3 play will begin where it ended last. If no CD is loaded, NO DISC will appear in the display.

17. **LOAD:** To load a disc into the system, press LOAD. Select a slot number using memory presets 1–6. When the display reads LOAD CD#, load the desired disc, label side up. If you do not choose a slot within 5 seconds, the system will choose for you. Once loaded, the first track will begin to play.

**To auto load up to 6 discs,** press and hold LOAD until the display reads AUTOLOAD#. Load the desired disc, label side up. The system will prompt you to load discs for the remaining available slots. Insert the discs, one at a time, label side up, when prompted. Once loaded, the disc in preset #1 will begin to play.

**Note:** An MP3 disc with folders will show F001 (folder #) T001 (track #) in the display. An MP3 disc without folders will show T001 (track#) in the display. Refer to *MP3 track and folder structure* later in this chapter for further information.

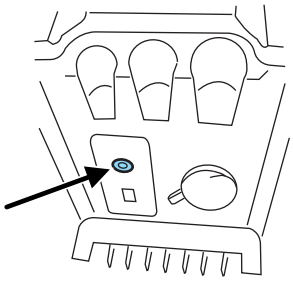
18. ⏏ **(CD eject):** To eject a disc from the system, press ⏏ . Select the correct slot number using memory presets 1–6. When ready, the system will eject the disc and the display will read REMOVE CD. If the disc is not removed in 15 seconds, the system will reload the disc.

**To auto eject up to 6 CDs,** press and hold ⏏ until the system begins ejecting all loaded discs. If the discs are not removed, the system will reload the discs.

19. **CD slot:** When prompted by the system, insert a CD label side up.

### Auxiliary input jack (Line in)

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.



Your vehicle is equipped with an Auxiliary Input Jack (AIJ). The Auxiliary Input Jack provides a way to connect your portable music player to the in-vehicle audio system. This allows the audio from a portable music player to be played through the vehicle speakers with high fidelity. To achieve optimal performance, please observe the following instructions when attaching your portable music device to the audio system.
If your vehicle is equipped with a navigation system, refer to *Auxiliary input jack* section in the *Audio features* chapter of your *Navigation system* supplement.

**Required equipment:**

1. Any portable music player designed to be used with headphones
2. An audio extension cable with stereo male 1/8 in. (3.5 mm) connectors at each end

**To play your portable music player using the auxiliary input jack:**

1. Begin with the vehicle parked and the radio turned off.
2. Ensure that the battery in your portable music player is new or fully charged and that the device is turned off.
3. Attach one end of the audio extension cable to the headphone output of your player and the other end of the audio extension cable to the AIJ in your vehicle.
4. Turn the radio on, using either a tuned FM station or a CD loaded into the system. Adjust the volume to a comfortable listening level.
5. Turn the portable music player on and adjust the volume to 1/2 the volume.

6. Press AUX on the vehicle radio repeatedly until LINE, LINE IN or SYNC LINE IN appears in the display.
You should hear audio from your portable music player, although it may be low.

7. Adjust the sound on your portable music player until it reaches the level of the FM station or CD by switching back and forth between the AUX and FM or CD controls.

**Troubleshooting:**

1. Do not connect the audio input jack to a line level output. Line level outputs are intended for connection to a home stereo and are not compatible with the AIJ. The AIJ will only work correctly with devices that have a headphone output with a volume control.

2. Do not set the portable music player's volume level higher than is necessary to match the volume of the CD or FM radio in your audio system as this will cause distortion and will reduce sound quality. Many portable music players have different output levels, so not all players should be set at the same levels. Some players will sound best at full volume and others will need to be set at a lower volume.

3. If the music sounds distorted at lower listening levels, turn the portable music player volume down. If the problems persists, replace or recharge the batteries in the portable music player.

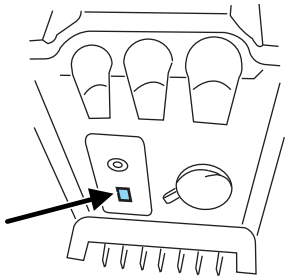
4. The portable music player must be controlled in the same manner when it is used with headphones as the AIJ does not provide control (play, pause, etc.) over the attached portable music player.

5. For safety reasons, connecting or adjusting the settings on your portable music player should not be attempted while the vehicle is moving. Also, the portable music player should be stored in a secure location, such as the center console or the glove box, when the vehicle is in motion. The audio extension cable must be long enough to allow the portable music player to be safely stored while the vehicle is in motion.

### USB port (if equipped)

**WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, accident and injury. Ford strongly recommends that drivers use extreme caution when using any device that may take their focus off the road. The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of their vehicle. Only use cell phones and other devices not essential to the driving task when it is safe to do so.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a USB port inside your center console. This feature allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks, and also to charge devices if they support this feature. For further information on this feature, refer to *Accessing and using your USB port* in the *SYNC* supplement or *Navigation system* supplement.



## GENERAL AUDIO INFORMATION

**Radio frequencies:**

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM: 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM: 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

**Radio reception factors:**

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

**CD/CD player care**

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. (Never touch the playing surface).
- Inspect discs before playing.
- Clean only with an approved CD cleaner.

- Wipe discs from the center out.

Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Clean using a circular motion.

**CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players.**

**Do not use any irregular shaped CDs or discs with a scratch protection film attached.**

**CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player as the label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ballpoint pens may damage CDs. Please contact your authorized dealer for further information.**

**Audio system warranty and service**

Refer to the *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

**MP3 track and folder structure**

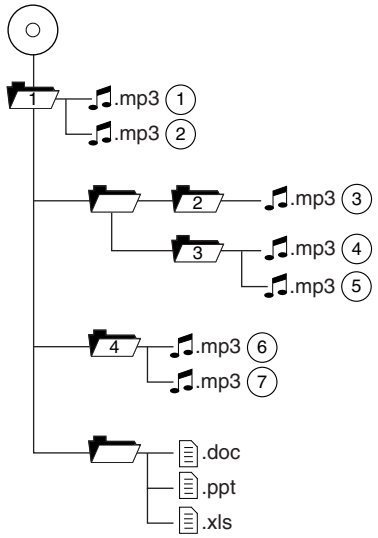
Your MP3 system recognizes MP3 individual tracks and folder structure as follows:

- There are two different modes for MP3 disc playback: MP3 track mode (system default) and MP3 folder mode. For more information on track and folder mode, refer to *Sample MP3 structure* in the following section.
- MP3 track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 disc. The player numbers each MP3 track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.
  **Note:** The maximum number of playable MP3 files may be less depending on the structure of the CD and exact model of radio present.
- MP3 folder mode represents a folder structure consisting of one level of folders. The CD player numbers all MP3 tracks on the disc (noted by the .mp3 file extension) and all folders containing MP3 files, from F001 (folder) T001 (track) to F253 T255.
- Creating discs with only one level of folders will help with navigation through the disc files.

**Sample MP3 structure**

If you are burning your own MP3 discs, it is important to understand how the system will read the structures you create. While various files may be present, (files with extensions other than mp3), only files with the .mp3 extension will be played. Other files will be ignored by the system. This enables you to use the same MP3 disc for a variety of tasks on your work computer, home computer and your in vehicle system.

In track mode, the system will display and play the structure as if it were only one level deep (all .mp3 files will be played, regardless of being in a specific folder). In folder mode, the system will only play the .mp3 files in the current folder.



### Satellite radio information (if equipped)

**Satellite radio channels:** SIRIUS broadcasts a variety of music, news, sports, weather, traffic and entertainment satellite radio channels. For more information and a complete list of SIRIUS satellite radio channels, visit www.sirius.com in the United States, www.sirius-canada.ca in Canada, or call SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474.

**Satellite radio reception factors:** To receive the satellite signal, your vehicle has been equipped with a satellite radio antenna located on the roof of your vehicle. The vehicle roof provides the best location for an unobstructed, open view of the sky, a requirement of a satellite radio system. Like AM/FM, there are several factors that can affect satellite radio reception performance:

- Antenna obstructions: For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a ground based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in an audio mute.

Unlike AM/FM audible static, you will hear an audio mute when there is a satellite radio signal interference. Your radio display may display NO SIGNAL to indicate the interference.

**SIRIUS satellite radio service:** SIRIUS Satellite Radio is a subscription based satellite radio service that broadcasts music, sports, news and entertainment programming. A service fee is required in order to receive SIRIUS service. Vehicles that are equipped with a factory installed SIRIUS Satellite Radio system include:

- Hardware and limited subscription term, which begins on the date of sale or lease of the vehicle.
- Use of online media player providing access to all SIRIUS music channels over the internet using any computer connected to the internet (U.S. customers only).

For information on extended subscription terms, contact SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474.

**Note:** SIRIUS reserves the unrestricted right to change, rearrange, add or delete programming including canceling, moving or adding particular channels, and its prices, at any time, with or without notice to you. Ford Motor Company shall not be responsible for any such programming changes.

**Satellite Radio Electronic Serial Number (ESN):** This 12–digit Satellite Serial Number is needed to activate, modify or track your satellite radio account. You will need this number when communicating with SIRIUS. While in Satellite Radio mode, you can view this number on the radio display by pressing AUX and Preset 1 control simultaneously.

| Radio Display | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| ACQUIRING | Radio requires more than two seconds to produce audio for the selected channel. | No action required. This message should disappear shortly. |
| SAT FAULT | Internal module or system failure present. | If this message does not clear within a short period of time, or with an ignition key cycle, your receiver may have a fault. See your authorized dealer for service. |
| INVALID CHNL | Channel no longer available. | This previously available channel is no longer available. Tune to another channel. If the channel was one of your presets, you may choose another channel for that preset button. |
| UNSUBSCRIBED | Subscription not available for this channel. | Contact SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474 to subscribe to the channel or tune to another channel. |
| NO TEXT | Artist information not available. | Artist information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly. |

| Radio Display | Condition | Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| NO TEXT | Song title information not available. | Song title information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly. |
| NO TEXT | Category information not available. | Category information not available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly. |
| NO SIGNAL | Loss of signal from the SIRIUS satellite or SIRIUS tower to the vehicle antenna. | You are in a location that is blocking the SIRIUS signal (i.e., tunnel, under an overpass, dense foliage, etc). The system is working properly. When you move into an open area, the signal should return. |
| UPDATING | Update of channel programming in progress. | No action required. The process may take up to three minutes. |
| CALL SIRIUS 1–888–539–7474 | Satellite service has been deactivated by SIRIUS Satellite Radio. | Call SIRIUS at 1–888–539–7474 to re-activate or resolve subscription issues. |

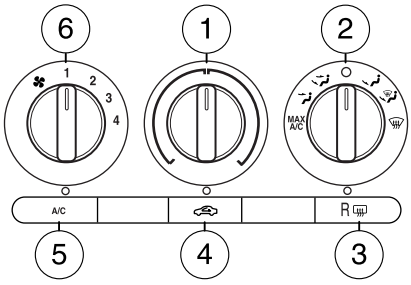
### NAVIGATION SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a navigation system. Refer to the *Navigation system* supplement for further information.

### SYNC (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with SYNC, a hands-free communications and entertainment system with special phone and media features. For more information, please refer to the *SYNC* supplement or to the *SYNC* section in the *Navigation system* supplement (if equipped).

## MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




1. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

2. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control setting:

**MAX A/C:** Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents only to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle.

**:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents.

**:** Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and floor vents.

**O (OFF):** Outside air is shut out and the climate system is turned off.

**:** Distributes air through the floor vents. **Note:** You may notice a small amount of air flowing from the demister and defroster vents.

**:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster vents, demisters and floor vents.

**:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster and demister vents. Can be used to clear thin ice or fog from the windshield. To exit select another mode.

3. **Rear defroster:** Press to activate/deactivate rear window defroster. Refer to *Rear window defroster* in this section for more information.

4. **Recirculated air:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in the vehicle cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation engages automatically with selection of MAX A/C or can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except defrost. Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.

5. **A/C:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in MAX A/C, (defrost) and (floor/defrost). Cannot be disabled in MAX A/C mode.

6. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

### Manual heating and air conditioning system operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle: do not drive with the airflow selector in the O (OFF) position or with recirculated air engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been "aired out."

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C mode, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle's transmission into the PARK gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

**For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C mode):**

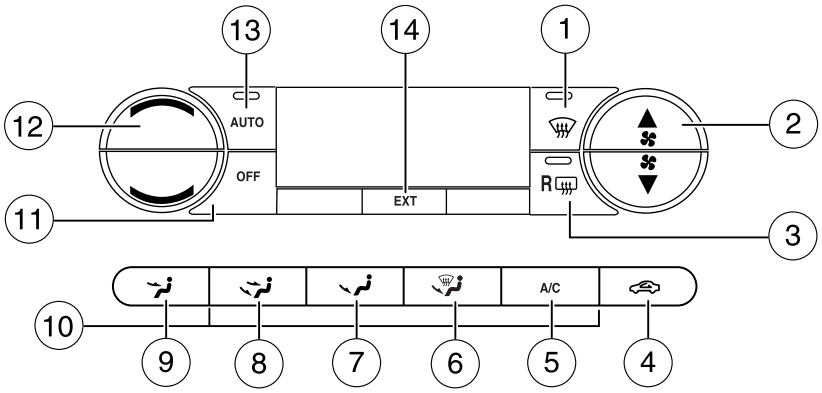
- Move the temperature control selector to the coldest setting.
- Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust to maintain passenger comfort.

**In the and modes:**

- Move the temperature control selector to the coldest setting.
- Select A/C and recirculated air . Use with A/C to provide colder airflow.
- Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust to maintain passenger comfort.
- **To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:**

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Set the temperature control to full heat.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

### AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL (ATC) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




**Temperature conversion:** To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius: If your vehicle is equipped with a full message center, refer to *Setup menu* in the *Message center* section of the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information. If your vehicle is equipped with a mini message center, see your authorized dealer for temperature conversion.

**MAX A/C setting:** In order to achieve maximum cooling performance, press , A/C, , and set the temperature to 60°F (16°C) and the highest blower setting.

1. **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster and demister vents. Can be used to clear thin ice or fog from the windshield. To exit select another mode.

2. **Fan speed control:** Press to manually increase or decrease the fan speed. To return to automatic fan operation, press AUTO.

3. **Rear defroster:** Press to defrost the rear window. Refer to *Rear window defroster* in this section for more information. If your vehicle is equipped with both rear defroster and heated mirrors, the same button will activate both.

4. **Recirculation control:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except (defrost). Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.

5. **A/C control:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in AUTO, (defrost) and (floor/defrost).

6. **:** Distributes air through the windshield defroster ducts, demister outlets, and the front and rear seat floor ducts. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging.

7. **:** Distributes air through the floor and rear seat floor ducts.

8. **:** Distributes air through the instrument panel and center console registers (if equipped) and the front and rear seat floor ducts.

9. **:** Distributes air through the instrument panel and center console registers (if equipped).

10. **Manual override controls:** Allows you to manually select where airflow is directed. To return to full automatic control, press AUTO.

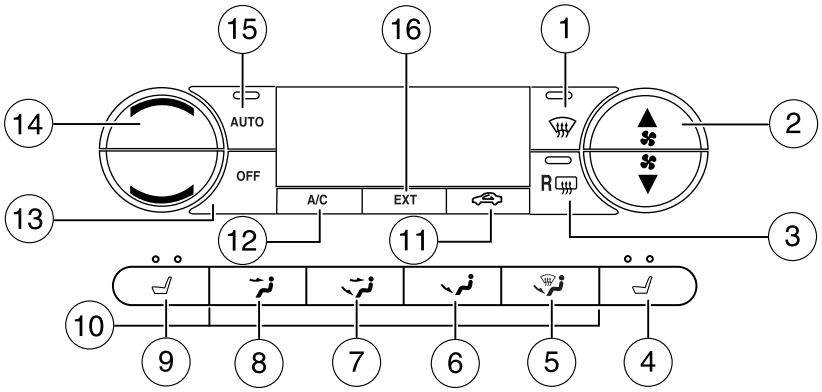
11. **OFF:** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.

12. **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature in the cabin of the vehicle. Press to increase/decrease the temperature.

13. **AUTO:** To engage automatic temperature control, press AUTO and select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.

14. **EXT:** Press to display outside temperature. Press again to display cabin temperature settings.

### Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) system with heated seats (if equipped)




**Temperature conversion:** To switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius: If your vehicle is equipped with a full message center, refer to *Setup menu* in the *Message center* section of the *Driver Controls* chapter. If your vehicle is equipped with a mini message center, see your authorized dealer for temperature conversion.

**MAX A/C setting:** In order to achieve maximum cooling performance, press , A/C, , and set the temperature to 60°F (16°C) and the highest blower setting.

1. **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster and demister vents. Can be used to clear thin ice or fog from the windshield. To exit select another mode.

2. **Fan speed control:** Press to manually increase or decrease the fan speed. To return to automatic fan operation, press AUTO.

3. **Rear defroster:** Press to defrost the rear window. Refer to *Rear window defroster* in this section for more information. If your vehicle is equipped with both rear defroster and heated mirrors, the same button will activate both.

4. **Passenger heated seat control:** Press to heat the passenger seat. Press once to activate high heat (two indicator lights). Press again to activate low heat (one indicator light). Press again to deactivate the passenger heated seat.

5. : Distributes air through the windshield defroster ducts, demister outlets, and the front and rear seat floor ducts. The system will automatically provide outside air to reduce window fogging.

6. : Distributes air through the floor and rear seat floor ducts.

7. : Distributes air through the instrument panel and center console registers (if equipped) and the front and rear seat floor ducts.

8. : Distributes air through the instrument panel and center console registers (if equipped).

9. **Driver heated seat control:** Press to heat the driver seat. Press once to activate high heat (two indicator lights). Press again to activate low heat (one indicator light). Press again to deactivate the driver heated seat.

10. **Manual override controls:** Allows you to manually select where airflow is directed. To return to full automatic control, press AUTO.

11. **Recirculation control:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except (defrost). Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections except MAX A/C.

12. **A/C control:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in AUTO, (defrost) and (floor/defrost).

13. **OFF:** Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.

14. **Temperature control:** Press to increase/decrease the temperature in the vehicle cabin.

15. **AUTO:** To engage automatic temperature control, press AUTO and select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.

16. **EXT:** Press to display outside temperature. Press again to display cabin temperature settings.

### Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) system operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the system OFF, or with recirculated air engaged and A/C off.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the back seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2-3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”

During extreme high ambient temperatures when idling stationary for extended periods of time in gear, it is recommended to run the A/C in the MAX A/C mode, reduce blower fan speed from the highest setting and put the vehicle’s transmission into the PARK gear position (automatic transmission only) to continue to receive cool air from your A/C system.

- **For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C):**

**Automatic operation:**

- Press AUTO for full automatic operation.
- Do not override A/C or (recirculated air).
- Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).

**Override operation:**

- Select air distribution.
- Select A/C and (recirculated air). Use (recirculated air) with A/C to provide colder airflow.
- Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C).
- Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.

**In MAX A/C setting:**

- Adjust the temperature control to full cold.
- Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.

**In (panel) or (panel/floor) modes:**

- Adjust the temperature control to full cold.
- Select A/C and (recirculated air). Use recirculated air with A/C to provide colder airflow.
- Set highest fan speed initially, then adjust to maintain comfort.
- **To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:**

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

### REAR WINDOW DEFROSTER

The rear defroster control is located on the climate control panel and works to clear the rear window of fog and thin ice.

The ignition must be on to operate the rear window defroster.

The rear defroster turns off automatically after 10 minutes or when the ignition is turned off. To manually turn off the defroster before 10 minutes have passed, push the control again.

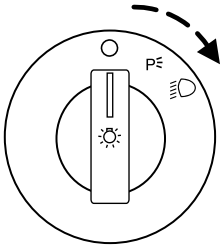
**Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals from the inside of the rear window. This may cause damage to the heated grid lines and will not be covered by your warranty.**

### HEADLAMP CONTROL

◯ Turns the lamps off.

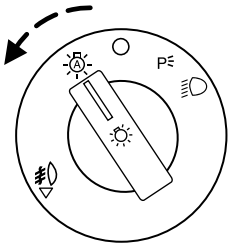
Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

Turns the low beam headlamps on.



### Autolamp control (if equipped)

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.



- To turn autolamps on, rotate the control counterclockwise to .
- To turn autolamps off, rotate the control clockwise to off.

The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for a predetermined amount of time after the ignition switch is turned to off. You can change the amount of time the lamps stay on by using the programming procedure that follows:

**Note:** If the vehicle is equipped with autolamps, it will have the *headlamps on with windshield wipers feature.* If the windshield wipers are turned on (for a fixed period of time), the exterior lamps will turn on with the headlamp control in the Autolamp position.

#### *Autolamps - Programmable exit delay*

Programmable exit delay allows the length of the autolamp exit delay to be changed.

To program the auto lamp exit time delay:

1. Start with the ignition in the off position and the headlamp control in the autolamp position.

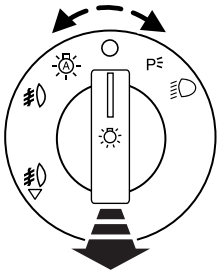
2. Turn the headlamp switch to off.

3. Turn the ignition switch to on and then back to off.

4. Turn the headlamp switch to the autolamp position. The headlamps will turn on.

5. Wait the desired amount of time for the exit delay you want (up to three minutes), then turn the headlamp switch to off. The headlamps will turn off.

### Fog lamp control (if equipped)



With the ignition on, the fog lamps can be turned on when the headlamp control is pulled toward you and is in any of the following positions:

- Parking lamps
- Low beams
- Autolamps (when active)

The fog lamp indicator light will illuminate when the fog lamps have been turned on. The fog lamps will not operate when the high beams are active.

### Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

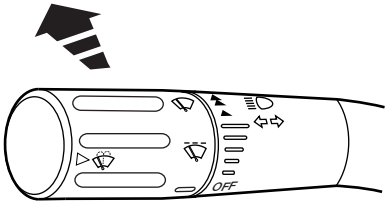
To activate:

- the ignition must be in the on position,
- the headlamp control is in the off, autolamps or parking lamp position and
- the transmission must be out of the P (Park) position.

**WARNING:** Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

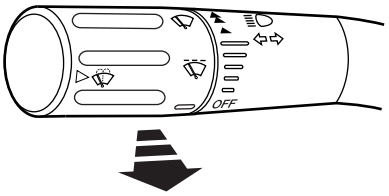
### High beams

Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever towards you to deactivate.




### Flash to pass

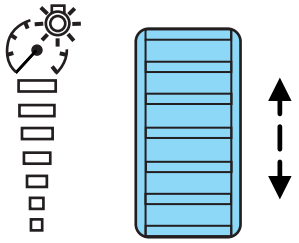
Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.




### PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable switches in the vehicle during headlamp and parking lamp operation.

Move the control to the full upright position, past detent, to turn on the interior lamps. Move the control to the full downward position, past detent, to turn off the interior lights. The instrument panel/switch lighting remains lit.



**Note:** If the battery is disconnected, discharged, or a new battery is installed, the dimmer switch requires re-calibration. Rotate the dimmer switch from the full dim position to the full dome/on position to reset. This will ensure that your displays are visible under all lighting conditions.

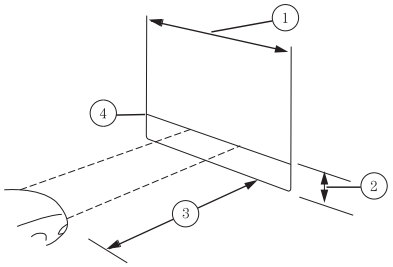
## AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.

### Vertical aim adjustment

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line

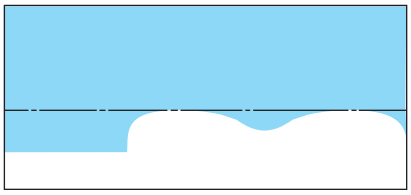



2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

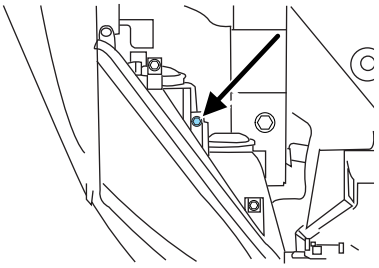
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.

To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

4. On the wall or screen you will observe an area of high intensity light. The top of the high intensity area should touch the horizontal reference line, if not, the beam will need to be adjusted using the next step.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise (to adjust down) or counterclockwise (to adjust up). The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.

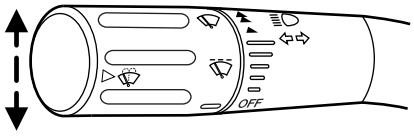


6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

HORIZONTAL AIM IS NOT REQUIRED FOR THIS VEHICLE AND IS NON-ADJUSTABLE.

### TURN SIGNAL CONTROL ⇦⇨

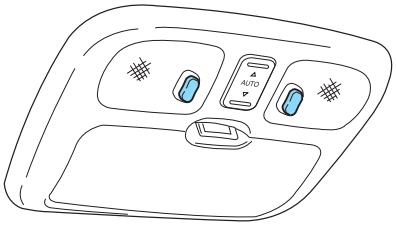
- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.




### INTERIOR LAMPS

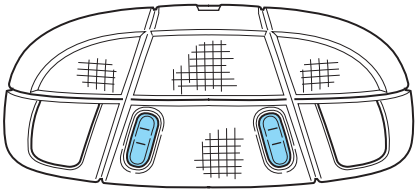
#### Dome lamps and map lamps

The map lamps are located on the overhead console. Press the controls to turn on the lamps.



Your vehicle may also have reading lamps within the rear dome lamp(s).

Press the switches on either side of the dome lamp to turn on the lamps.



### Ambient/Mood lighting (if equipped)

Illuminates four footwells, two console cupholders and the console bin with a choice of seven colors. The ambient lighting control switch is located on the center console near the gearshift lever. To activate, press and release the control switch to cycle through the seven color choices plus the off state.

The lights come on whenever the ignition is in either the on or accessory position. **Note:** The ambient lights will stay on until after the ignition is placed in the off position and either of the front doors are opened or the delay accessory timer expires.

## BULB REPLACEMENT

### Headlamp condensation

Exterior lamps are vented to accommodate normal changes in pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a thin film of mist can form on the interior of the lens. The thin mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation. Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

- Presence of thin mist (no streaks, drip marks or droplets)
- Fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens

Examples of unacceptable moisture (usually caused by a lamp water leak) are:

- Water puddle inside the lamp
- Large water droplets, drip marks or streaks present on the interior of the lens

Take your vehicle to dealer for service if any of the above conditions of unacceptable moisture are present.

### Using the right bulbs

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be marked with an authorized “D.O.T.” for North America and an “E” for Europe to ensure lamp performance, light brightness and pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb burn time.

| Function | Number of bulbs | Trade number |
|---|---|---|
| Headlamp high beam | 2 | H7 |
| Headlamp low beam | 2 | H11LL |
| Front park/turn signal lamp | 2 | 3457NAK (amber) |
| Front sidemarker lamp | 2 | 168 |
| *Rear sidemarker lamp | N/A | SNAP LED 70 |
| *Stop/tail lamp | N/A | LED |
| Rear turn signal lamp | 2 | 3157 A (amber) |
| Backup lamp | 2 | 921 |
| License plate lamp | 2 | C5W |
| High-mount brake lamp | 1 | 921 |
| Fog lamp (if equipped) | 2 | H11 |
| Map lamp | 2 | 12V6W |
| Dome/reading lamp | 6 | 578 |
| Visor vanity lamp - Slide on Rail system (SOR) | 2 | 37 or 14V1CP |
| Puddle lamp (if equipped) | 2 | W5W |
| Glove box lamp | 1 | 194 |
| Luggage compartment lamp | 1 | 578 |
| All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted. | | |
| To replace all instrument panel lights - see your authorized dealer. | | |
| *To replace these lamps - see your authorized dealer. | | |

### Replacing exterior bulbs

Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

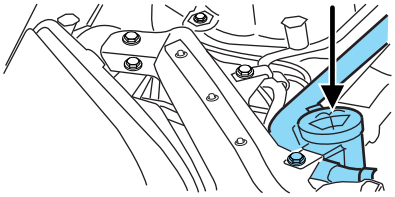
#### *Replacing headlamp bulbs*

**Highbeam bulb replacement**

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.

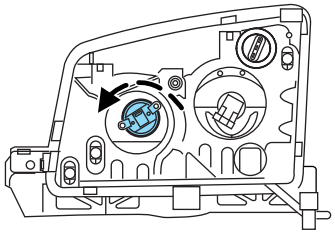
2. Reach over the front bolster.

3. Disengage top of flexible washer bottle filler neck from snap strap attachment and position it to gain access path to the high beam bulb (Passenger side only).

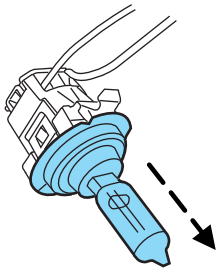


4. Remove the protective cap/grill from the headlamp housing by grabbing it and pulling rearward.

5. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pulling it straight out of the lamp assembly.



6. Carefully pull bulb straight out of socket and push in the new one.



**WARNING:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

7. For ease of bulb socket installation into the lamp assembly, hold the bulb socket at 15 degrees clockwise from a vertical position. Use the two lead wires oriented up to represent the vertical reference position.

8. From the 15 degree position, rotate the bulb socket clockwise to a locked position.

9. Tuck the two lead wires into the lamp housing to assure that they are not pinched when installing the protective rubber cap.

10. Install the protective cap/grill to the housing circular ring by pushing and pressing it forward.

11. Re-apply pressure around the complete circular ring on the housing to make sure the protective cap is completely seated.

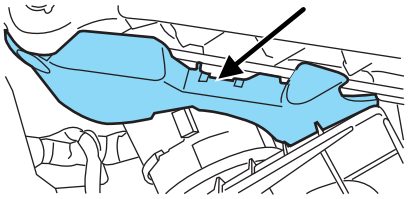
12. Reconnect washer bottle filler neck snap strap by reversing step 3 (Passenger side only).

13. Turn the headlamps on and make sure they work properly. If the headlamp was correctly aligned before you changed the bulb, you should not need to align it again.

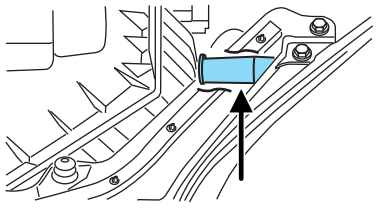
**Lowbeam bulb replacement**

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.

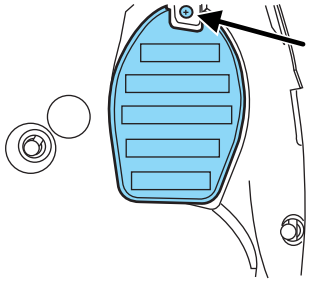
2. Remove the vertical shield from the bolster by disengaging the S-shaped clip and rotating it up in a clockwise direction (Driver side only).



3. Remove the air tube from the air filter assembly (Driver side only).

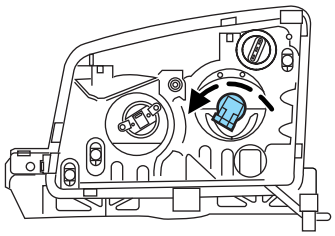


4. Remove screw from oval splash shield access panel from the exterior wheel well area. Lift up and rearward to release a hidden finger attachment at the lower portion of the panel (Passenger side only).



5. From the exterior wheel well area, reach arm through splash shield opening to access bulb socket (Passenger side only).

6. Remove the protective cap/grill from the headlamp housing by grabbing it and pulling rearward.

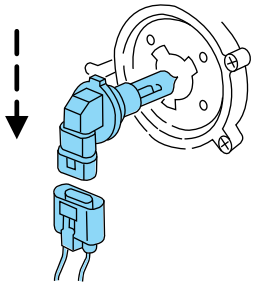


7. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pulling it straight out of the lamp assembly.

8. Let go of the bulb socket and leave it dangling near the lamp housing (Passenger side only).

9. Reach over the front bolster in the engine area and, with a tool if necessary, bring the bulb socket upwards into an unobstructed area to replace the bulb (Passenger side only).

10. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb socket and discard the old bulb socket.



11. Connect the new bulb socket to the electrical connector.

**WARNING:** Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

12. After the new bulb is installed, carefully let the bulb socket dangle downward near the lamp housing (Passenger side only).

13. From the exterior wheel well area, reach arm through splash shield opening to install bulb socket with new bulb (Passenger side only).

14. Install the new bulb socket into the lamp assembly by aligning the indexing fingers, then rotate clockwise to locked position.

15. Install the protective cap/grill to the housing circular ring by pushing and pressing it forward.

16. Re-apply pressure around the complete circular ring on the housing to make sure the protective cap is completely seated.

17. Reinstall splash shield access panel with screw (Passenger side only).

18. Reinstall air tube to the air filter assembly (Driver side only).

19. Reinstall the vertical shield to the bolster (Driver side only).

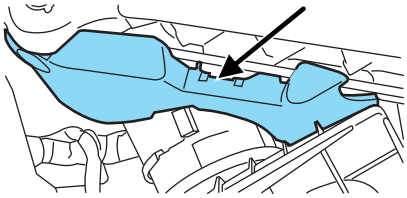
20. Turn the headlamps on and make sure they work properly. If the headlamp was correctly aligned before you changed the bulb, you should not need to align it again.

### *Replacing front parking lamp/turn signal bulbs*

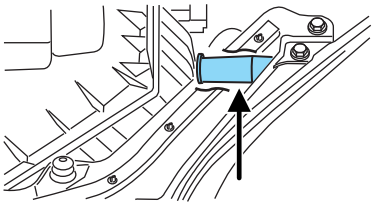
1. Make sure headlamp switch is in the off position, then open the hood.

2. Reach over the front bolster.

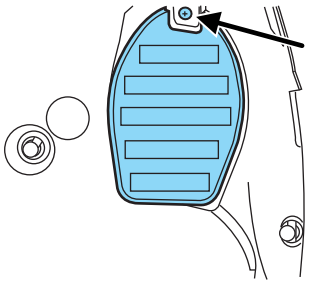
3. Remove the vertical shield from the bolster by disengaging the S-shaped clip and rotating it up in a clockwise direction (Driver side only).



4. Remove the air tube from the air filter assembly (Driver side only).

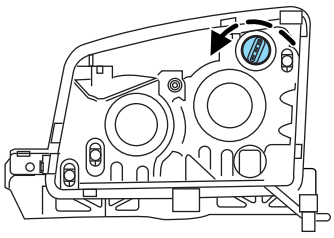


5. Remove screw from oval splash shield access panel from the exterior wheel well area. Lift up and rearward to release a hidden finger attachment at the lower portion of the panel (Passenger side only).



6. From the exterior wheel well area, reach arm through splash shield opening to access bulb socket (Passenger side only).

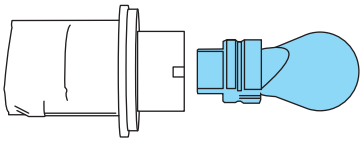
7. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pulling it out of the lamp assembly.



8. Let go of the bulb socket and let the bulb socket dangle downward near the lamp housing (Passenger side only).

9. Reach over the front bolster in the engine area and, with a tool if necessary, bring the bulb socket upwards into an unobstructed area to replace the bulb (Passenger side only).

10. Carefully pull bulb straight out of socket and push in the new one.



11. After the new bulb is installed, carefully let the bulb socket dangle downward near the lamp housing (Passenger side only).

12. From the exterior wheel well area, reach arm through splash shield opening to install bulb socket with new bulb (Passenger side only).

13. Install new bulb socket into the lamp assembly by aligning the indexing fingers, then rotate clockwise to locked position.

14. Reinstall the air tube to the air filter assembly (Driver side only).

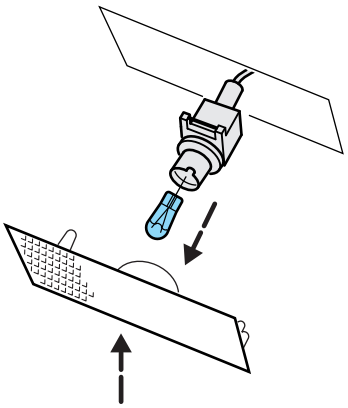
15. Reinstall the vertical shield to the bolster (Driver side only).

16. Reinstall the splash shield access panel with screw (Passenger side only).

### *Replacing front side marker bulbs*

1. Make sure the headlamp control is in the off position.

2. Pry the lamp away from the vehicle at the rear of lamp at the wheel opening. Rotate lamp from the wheel opening away from the vehicle. As the lamp separates from the vehicle, slide the lamp towards the wheel opening to disengage lamp.



3. Rotate the lamp clockwise while holding the electrical connector in place with your other hand. After rotating the lamp 90 degrees clockwise, pull and disengage the wire harness and bulb from the lamp.

4. With the bulb exposed, carefully remove the bulb from the socket by grasping the bulb and pulling it away from the wire harness.

Replace with a new bulb, and reverse the removal steps to complete the process.

### *Replacing stop/tail/turn/and side marker bulbs*

Your vehicle is equipped with a rear lamp that has a stop/tail/turn/and side marker lamp module containing integral multiple light emitting diodes (LED). If one or more LEDs burn out, the complete lamp module has to be replaced. See your authorized dealer for the replacement LED module.

### *Replacing rear turn signal bulbs*

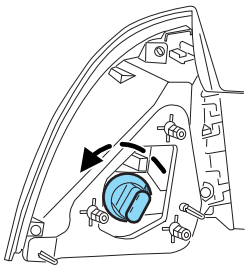
1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position and open the trunk.

2. Lift out trunk floor carpeting panel to access a luggage scuff plate (hard molding) shingles and a trunk side panel (dark grey, soft wheelhouse side trim panel) at the lamp area.

3. Carefully pull/push the trunk side panel (dark grey, soft wheelhouse side trim panel) outboard to expose the lamp assembly. The most effective point to grasp the trunk side panel when pulling it out from the luggage scuff plate is at it's bottom edge where that edge meets the exposed sheet metal of the trunk floor.

**Note:** Do not allow the trunk side panel to remain bent and untucked from the luggage scuff plate (hard molding) for a long period of time. Doing so may result in permanent deformation.

4. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pulling it out of the lamp assembly.



5. Pull the bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.

6. Install the bulb socket into the lamp assembly by rotating it clockwise.

7. Carefully push the trunk side panel (dark grey, soft wheelhouse side trim panel) back to the shingle position to the luggage scuff plate (hard molding).

8. Install trunk floor carpeting panel.

### *Replacing backup lamp bulbs*

The backup lamp bulbs are located in the trunk lid.

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position and open trunk to access the lamp assembly.

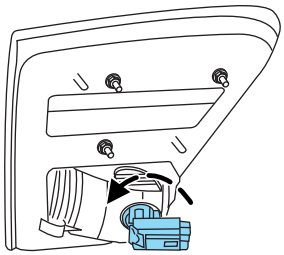
2. Position the decklid trim aside by removing 3 to 4 pin-type retainers to expose the lamp assembly.

3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pulling it out of the lamp assembly.

4. Pull the bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.

5. Install the bulb socket into the lamp assembly by rotating it clockwise.

6. Carefully reposition the trim back to its original position and secure the retainers.



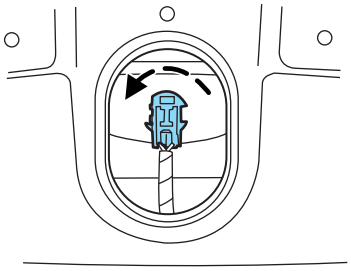
### *Replacing high-mount brake lamp bulb*

1. Make sure the ignition control is in the off position.

2. Open the trunk and reach underneath package tray to locate lamp assembly.

3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating it counterclockwise, then pulling it out of the lamp assembly.

4. Pull the bulb straight from the socket and push in the new bulb.



5. Install the bulb socket into the lamp assembly by rotating it clockwise.

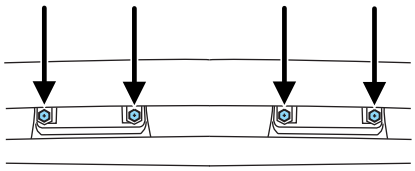
### *Replacing license plate lamp bulbs*

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the off position.

2. Remove the two screws from the license plate lamp assembly.

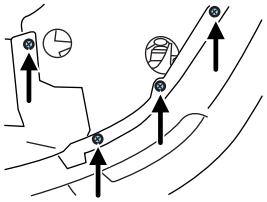
3. Remove bulb socket by turning counterclockwise.

4. Carefully pull the bulb out from the socket.



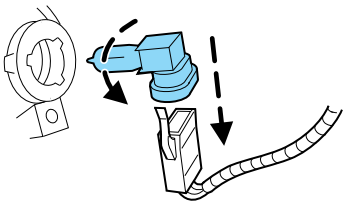
Install new bulb(s) in reverse order.

### *Replacing fog lamp bulbs (if equipped)*



1. Make sure the fog lamp switch is in the off position.
2. From underneath the vehicle, partially remove the tire splash shield by removing four drive screws.

After removing to allow free access to the front fog lamp bulb and electrical wire harness, the splash shield flap should be able to be repositioned.

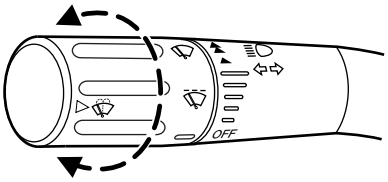


3. Rotate the harness/bulb assembly counterclockwise, to remove from the fog lamp.
4. Carefully disconnect the bulb from the harness assembly by releasing the two snap clips.

Install the new bulb in reverse order.

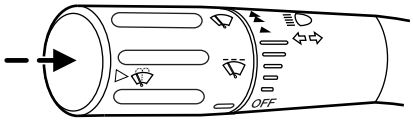
### MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

**Windshield wiper:** Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.




**Speed dependent wipers:** When the wiper control is set on the intermittent settings, the speed of the wipers will automatically adjust with the vehicle speed. The faster your vehicle is travelling the faster the wipers will go.

**Windshield washer:** Push the end of the stalk:




- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick push and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long push and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to ten seconds.

**Courtesy wipe feature:** One extra wipe will occur a few seconds after washing the front window to clear any excess washer fluid remaining on the windshield.

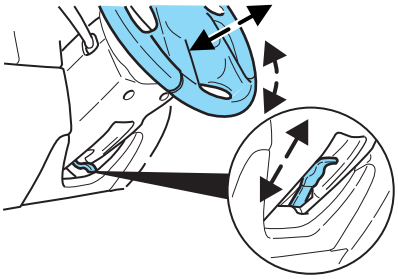
**Note:** Do not operate the washer when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat. Check the washer fluid level frequently. Do not operate the wipers when the windshield is dry. This may scratch the glass, damage the wiper blades and cause the wiper motor to burn out. Before operating the wiper on a dry windshield, always use the windshield washer. In freezing weather, be sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers.

#### Windshield wiper rainlamp feature (if equipped with Autolamp)

When the windshield wipers are turned on during daylight, and the headlamp control is in the autolamp position, the exterior lamps will turn on after a brief delay and will remain on until the wipers are turned off.

### TILT/TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL

To adjust the steering wheel:

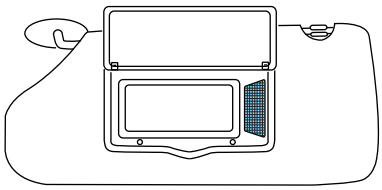


1. Pull the lever down to unlock the steering column.
2. While the lever is in the down position, move the steering wheel up or down and in or out until you find the desired position.
3. While holding the steering wheel in place, pull the lever up to its original position to lock the steering column.

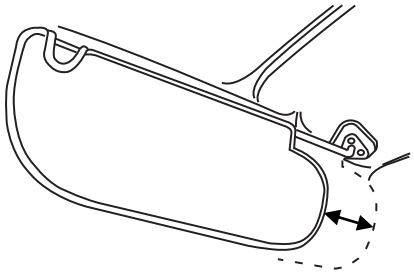
**WARNING:** Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

### ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamps.



**Slide on rod feature (if equipped)**



Rotate the visor towards the side window and extend it rearward for additional sunlight coverage.

**Note:** To stow the visor back into the headliner, visor must be retracted before moving it back towards the windshield.

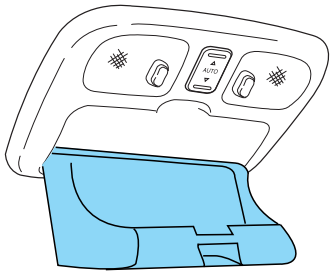
## OVERHEAD CONSOLE

The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package.

### Storage compartment

Press on the rear edge of the compartment door to open.

The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or a similar object.



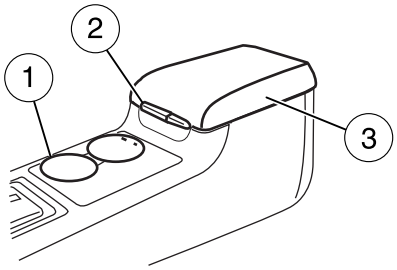
## CENTER CONSOLE

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

1. Cup holders

2. Secondary storage bin (on hinges inside utility compartment)

3. Utility compartment with power point, AIJ (Audio Input Jack), USB port (if equipped), and coin holder inside

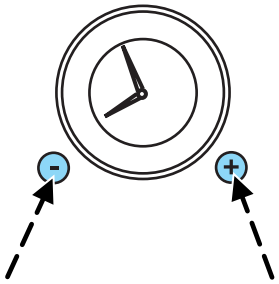



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cup holder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

### CLOCK

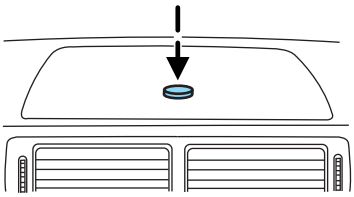
Press the right (+) control to move the time display forwards.

Press the left (-) control to move the time display backwards.




### INSTRUMENT PANEL STORAGE COMPARTMENT

The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or similar sized objects. Press the control to open the storage compartment.

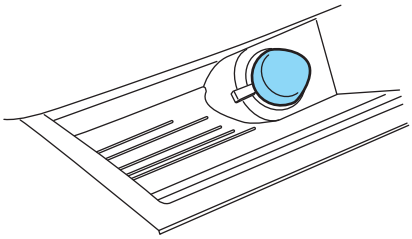


### AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12VDC)

**Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlet as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.**

The auxiliary power points are located on the instrument panel and in the center console utility compartment.

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element (if equipped).



To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use the power point(s) over the vehicle capacity of 12 VDC/180W. If the power point or cigar lighter socket is not working, a fuse may have blown. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter for information on checking and replacing fuses.

To have full capacity usage of your power point, the engine is required to be running to avoid unintentional discharge of the battery. To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running,
- do not leave battery chargers, video game adapters, computers and other devices plugged in overnight or when the vehicle is parked for extended periods.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

**Cigar/Cigarette lighter (if equipped)**

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter socket.

Do not hold the lighter in with your hand while it is heating, this will damage the lighter element and socket. The lighter will be released from its heating position when it is ready to be used.

Improper use of the lighter can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

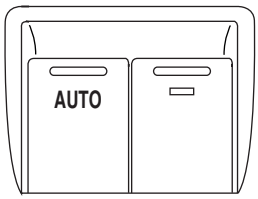
## POWER WINDOWS

**WARNING:** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

**WARNING:** When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and pull the window switches to open and close windows.

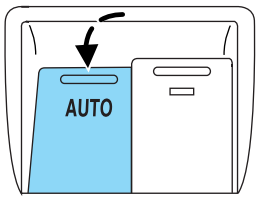
- Push down (to the first detent) and hold the switch to open.
- Pull up (to the first detent) and hold the switch to close.




**Rear Window Buffeting:** When one or both of the rear windows are open, the vehicle may demonstrate a wind throb or buffeting noise. This noise can be alleviated by lowering a front window approximately 2–3 inches (5–8 cm).

### One touch down

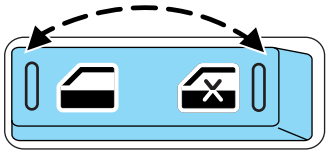
Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Push the switch completely down to the second detent and release quickly. The window will open fully. Momentarily press the switch to any position to stop the window operation.




### Window lock

The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls (except for the driver's) press the right side of the control. Press the left side to restore the window controls.



### Accessory delay

With accessory delay, the window switches, audio system, and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off or until either front door is opened.

## INTERIOR MIRROR

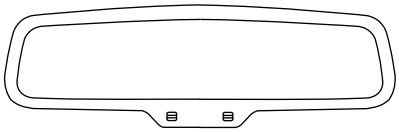
The interior rear view mirror has two pivot points on the support arm which lets you adjust the mirror UP or DOWN and from SIDE to SIDE.

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

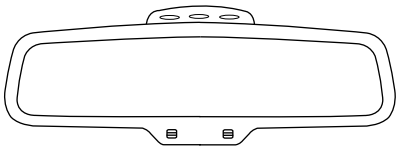
### Automatic dimming interior rear view mirror (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with an interior rear view mirror that has an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal (high reflective) state to the non-glare (darkened) state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from behind the vehicle, it will automatically adjust (darken) to minimize glare.

**Without microphone**



**With microphone**



The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

**Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the interior rear view mirror since this may impair proper mirror performance.**

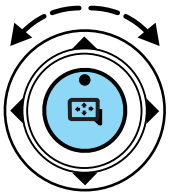
**Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.**

## EXTERIOR MIRRORS

### Power side view mirrors

**WARNING:** Do not adjust the mirror while the vehicle is in motion.

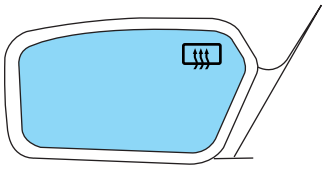
To adjust your mirrors:



1. Rotate the control clockwise to adjust the right mirror and rotate the control counterclockwise to adjust the left mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to lock mirrors in place.

**Heated mirrors (if equipped)**

Both mirrors are heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog when the rear window defrost is activated.



**Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.**

## SPEED CONTROL

With speed control set, you can maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

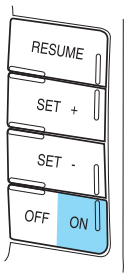
**WARNING:** Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

### Setting speed control

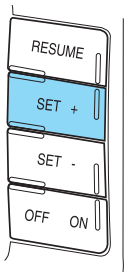
**Note: The appearance of your vehicle's speed control switches may vary according to your option package.**

The controls for using your speed control are located on the steering wheel for your convenience.

1. Press the ON control and release it.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.




3. Press the SET + control and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
5. The indicator light on the instrument cluster will turn on.




**Note:**

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

#### *Disengaging speed control*

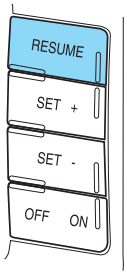
To disengage the speed control:

- Tap the brake pedal or clutch pedal (if equipped)

Disengaging the speed control will not erase previous set speed.

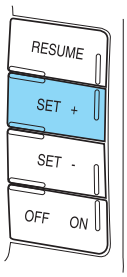
### *Resuming a set speed*

Press the RESUME control and release it. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed.




### *Increasing speed while using speed control*

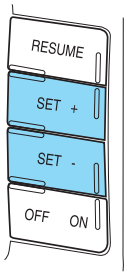
There are two ways to set a higher speed:




- Press and hold the SET + control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET + control to operate the Tap-Up function. Press and release this control to increase the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed press and release the SET + control.

### *Reducing speed while using speed control*

There are two ways to reduce a set speed:



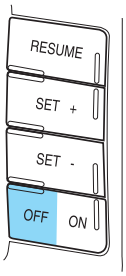

- Press and hold the SET - control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET - control to operate the Tap-Down function. Press and release this control to decrease the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Depress the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached and press the SET + control.

### *Turning off speed control*

There are two ways to turn off the speed control:

- Press the OFF control.
- Turn off the ignition.

**Note:** When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.

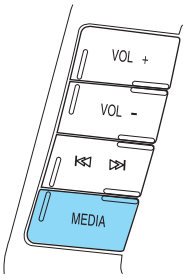



## STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

### Radio control features

Press MEDIA to select:

- AM, FM1, FM2, or CD
- SAT1, SAT2 or SAT3 (Satellite Radio mode if equipped).
- LINE IN (Auxiliary input jack) (if equipped)

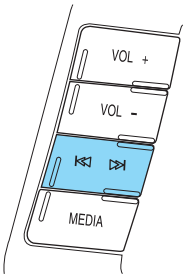



**In Radio mode:**

- Press ⏮ ⏭ to access the next/previous preset station.

**In CD mode:**

- Press ⏮ ⏭ to listen to the next track on the disc.

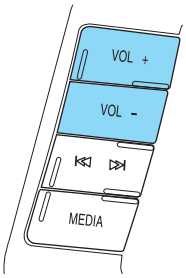



**In Satellite radio mode (if equipped):**

- Press ⏮ ⏭ to advance through preset channels.

**In any mode:**

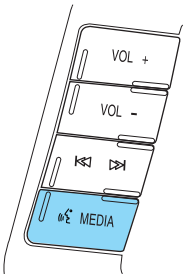
- Press VOL + or VOL - to adjust the volume.




**Navigation system hands free control features (if equipped)**

Press and hold control briefly until the voice icon appears on the navigation display to use the voice command feature.

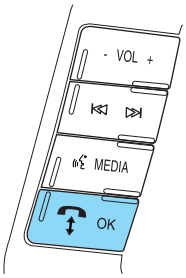
Press to complete a voice command.




For further information on the navigation system, refer to the *Navigation System* supplement.

**SYNC system hands free control feature (if equipped)**

Press briefly to use the voice command feature. You will hear a tone and LISTENING will appear in the radio display. Press and hold to exit voice command.

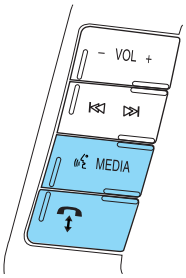



Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to end a call or exit phone mode.

Press to scroll through various menus and selections. Press OK to confirm your selection.

For further information on the SYNC system, refer to the *SYNC* supplement.

**Navigation system/SYNC hands free control features (if equipped)**




Press control briefly until the voice icon appears on the Navigation display to use the voice command feature.

Press to activate phone mode or answer a phone call. Press and hold to exit phone mode or end a call.

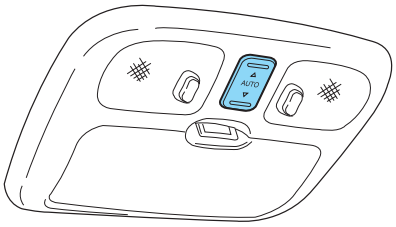
For further information on the Navigation system/SYNC system, refer to the *Navigation System* and *SYNC* supplements.

## MOON ROOF (IF EQUIPPED)

You can move the glass panel of the moon roof back to open or tilt up (from the closed position) to ventilate the vehicle.

**WARNING:** Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

**To open the moon roof:**




The moon roof is equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express opening, closing and venting feature. Press and release the rear portion of the control. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

**WARNING:** When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

**To close the moon roof:**

The moon roof is equipped with an automatic, one-touch, express closing feature. Press and release the front portion of the control. To stop motion at any time during the one-touch closing, press the control again.

**Bounce-back:**

When an obstacle has been detected in the moon roof opening as the moon roof is closing, the moon roof will automatically open and stop at a prescribed position. This is known as “bounce-back”. If the ignition is turned off (without accessory delay being active) during bounce-back, the moon roof will move until the bounce-back position is reached.

**Bounce-back override:**

To override bounce-back, press and hold the front portion of the control. For example: Bounce-back can be used to overcome the resistance of ice on the moon roof or seals. If during a bounce-back condition, the control is released to the neutral position, then held in the one-touch position within two seconds after the moon roof reaches the bounce-back position, **the moon roof will travel with no bounce-back protection.** If the control is released before the moon roof reaches fully closed or the ignition is turned off (without accessory delay being active), the moon roof will stop. Security override can be used if the moon roof movement is restricted in some way, for example, if there is ice on the moon roof or seals.

**To vent:**

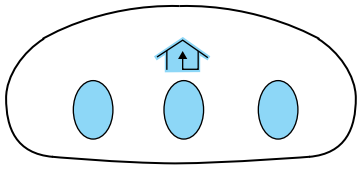
- To tilt the moon roof into the vent position (when the glass panel is closed), press and release the front portion of the control.
- To close the moon roof from the vent position, press and hold the rear portion of the control until the glass panel stops moving.

The moon roof has a sliding shade that can be opened or closed when the glass panel is shut. To close the shade, pull it toward the front of the vehicle

**Accessory delay:**

With accessory delay, the window switches, audio system, and moon roof (if equipped) may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition switch is turned off or until any door is opened

## HOMELINK® WIRELESS CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



The HomeLink® Wireless Control System, located on the driver's visor, provides a convenient way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters with a single built-in device. This feature will learn the radio frequency codes of most transmitters to operate garage doors, entry gate operators, security systems, entry door locks, and home or office lighting.

**WARNING:** When programming your HomeLink® Wireless Control System to a garage door or gate, be sure that people and objects are out of the way to prevent potential injury or damage.

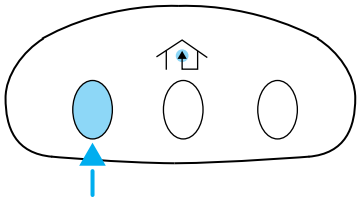
Do not use the HomeLink® Wireless Control System with any garage door opener that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by U.S. federal safety standards (this includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982). A garage door which cannot detect an object, signaling the door to stop and reverse, does not meet current U.S. federal safety standards. For more information, contact HomeLink® at: **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

Retain the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future programming procedures (i.e. new HomeLink® equipped vehicle purchase). It is also suggested that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed Homelink® buttons be erased for security purposes, refer to *Programming* in this section.

### Programming

**Do not program HomeLink® with the vehicle parked in the garage.**

**Note:** Your vehicle may require the ignition switch to be turned to the accessory position for programming and/or operation of the HomeLink®. It is also recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device being programmed to HomeLink® for quicker training and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal.



1. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter 1–3 inches (2–8 cm) away from the HomeLink® button you wish to program (located on your visor) while keeping the indicator light in view.

2. Simultaneously press and hold both the chosen HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from a slow to a rapidly blinking light. Now you may release both the HomeLink® and hand-held transmitter buttons.

**Note:** Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to replace Step 2 with procedures noted in the *Gate Operator and Canadian Programming* in this section for Canadian residents.

3. Firmly **press, hold for five seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button up to two separate times to activate the door. If the door does not activate, press and hold the just-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.

- If the indicator light **stays on constantly, programming is complete** and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
- If the indicator light blinks **rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light continue with "Programming" Steps 4 through 6** to complete programming of a rolling code equipped device (most commonly a garage door opener).

4. At the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit) in the garage, locate the "learn" or "smart" button (usually near where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit).

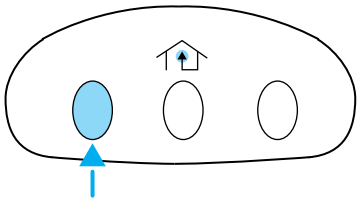
5. Firmly press and release the "learn" or "smart" button. (The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.)

**Note:** There are 30 seconds in which to initiate Step 6.

6. Return to the vehicle and firmly **press, hold for two seconds and release** the programmed HomeLink® button. Repeat the **press/hold/release** sequence again and, depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code equipped device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

HomeLink® should now activate your rolling code equipped device. To program additional HomeLink® buttons begin with Step 1 in this section. For questions or comments, please contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

### Gate Operator & Canadian Programming



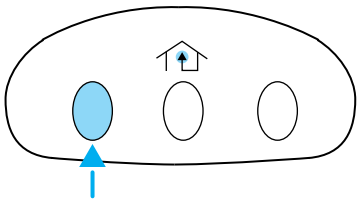
During programming, your hand-held transmitter may automatically stop transmitting — not allowing enough time for HomeLink® to accept the signal from the hand-held transmitter.

After completing Step 1 outlined in the *Programming* section, replace Step 2 with the following:

**Note:** If programming a garage door opener or gate operator, it is advised to unplug the device during the "cycling" process to prevent overheating.

- Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button (note Step 2 in the *Programming* section) while you press and release — **every two seconds** ("cycle") your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been accepted by the HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink® accepts the radio frequency signal.
- Proceed with Step 3 in the *Programming* section.

### Operating the HomeLink® Wireless Control System

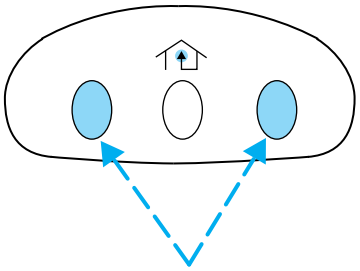


To operate, simply press and release the appropriate HomeLink® button. Activation will now occur for the trained product (garage door, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, or home or office lighting etc.). For convenience, the hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time. In the event that there are still programming difficulties, contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

### Erasing HomeLink® buttons

To erase the three programmed buttons (individual buttons cannot be erased):

- Press and hold the two outer HomeLink® buttons until the indicator light begins to flash-after 20 seconds. Release both buttons. Do not hold for longer that 30 seconds.



HomeLink® is now in the train (or learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

#### *Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button*

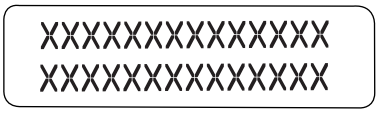
To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. **Do NOT** release the button.

2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. Without releasing the HomeLink® button, follow Step 1 in the *Programming* section.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at **www.homelink.com** or **1–800–355–3515.**

### MESSAGE CENTER

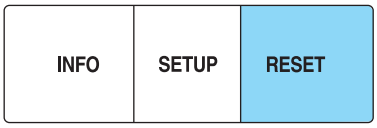



With the ignition in the on position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information **through a constant monitor of vehicle systems.** You may select display features on the message center for a display of status preceded by a brief indicator chime. The system will also notify you of potential vehicle problems with a display of system warnings followed by a long indicator chime.

### Selectable features

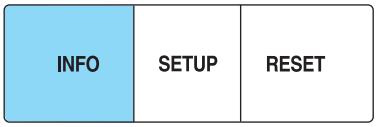
#### *Reset*

Press this control to select and reset functions shown in the INFO menu and SETUP menu.




#### *Info menu*

This control displays the following control displays:



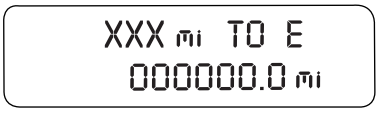

- Odometer
- Trip Odometer A or B
- Distance to Empty
- Average Fuel Economy
- Average Speed
- Trip Elapsed Drive Time 1 or 2
- Compass (if equipped)
- Compass zone/calibration adjustment

#### *Odometer/Trip odometer*

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

#### *Distance to empty (DTE)*

Selecting this function from the INFO menu estimates approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions.




Remember to turn the ignition off when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The DTE function will display LOW FUEL LEVEL when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km) to empty. If you RESET this warning message, this display will return within 10 minutes.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is reinitialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

### *Average fuel economy (AFE)*

Select this function from the INFO menu to display your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.

If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing 100 miles traveled by gallons of fuel used (kilometers traveled by liters used), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.
2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the RESET control (press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the function) after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

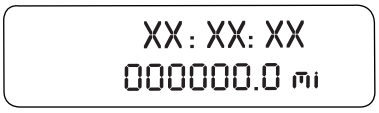
For more information refer to *Essentials of good fuel economy* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

### *Average Speed*

Select this function from the INFO menu to display AVERAGE SPEED and press the RESET control (press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the function). Your average speed from that point will be displayed until RESET is pressed and held for two seconds again.

### *Trip elapsed drive time*

Select this function from the INFO menu to display a timer.




To operate the Trip Elapsed Drive Time perform the following:

1. Press and release RESET in order to start the timer.
2. Press and release RESET to pause the timer.
3. Press and hold RESET for two seconds in order to reset the timer.

### *Compass display (if equipped)*

Select this function from the INFO menu. Press the INFO button repeatedly until the Compass and Odometer are displayed. (Do not select Trip, DTE, or AFE. The top of the message center must be blank).

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment.*

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment.*

### *Compass zone/calibration adjustment*

Perform this adjustment in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines.

For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

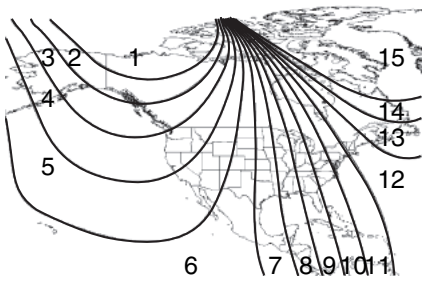
1. Turn ignition to the on position.

2. Start the engine.

3. Press the INFO button repeatedly until the Compass and Odometer are displayed. (Do not select Trip, DTE, or AFE. The top of the message center must be blank).

**Note:** If the compass displays ″CAL 000000.0 mi″ instead of heading information, the compass will need to be calibrated. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the ″CAL″ indicator changes to display compass heading. This may take up to three circles to complete calibration.

4. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.




5. Press and hold the RESET until the message center display changes to show the current zone setting.

6. Release the RESET control, then slowly press RESET down again.

7. Press the SETUP control repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. To exit the zone setting mode press and release the RESET control.

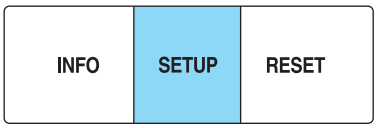
8. Press the RESET control to start the compass calibration function.

9. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE indicator changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. This will take up to three circles to complete calibration.

10. The compass is now calibrated.

### *Setup menu*

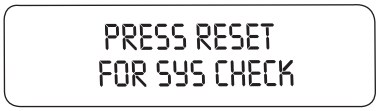
Press this control for the following displays:




- System Check
- Units (English/Metric)
- Language
- Easy entry/exit seat (if equipped)
- Reverse sensing system (Park Aid) (if equipped)

### *System check*

Selecting this function from the SETUP menu causes the message center to cycle through each of the systems being monitored.




Pressing the RESET control cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

Some monitored systems show message only if a warning is present.

The sequence of the system check report is as follows:

1. DOORS CLOSED
2. ENGINE TEMPERATURE
3. OIL PRESSURE
4. BRAKE FLUID LEVEL
5. TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (if equipped and warning is present)
6. EXTERIOR LAMPS (if equipped)
7. REMOVE OBJECT NEAR PASSENGER SEAT (if warning is present)
8. PARKING AID (if equipped and warning is present)
9. FUEL LEVEL
10. DISTANCE TO EMPTY

### *Units (English/Metric)*

1. Select this function from the SETUP menu for the current units to be displayed.

2. Press the RESET control to change from English to Metric.

### *Language*

1. Select this function from the SETUP menu for the current language to be displayed.

2. Pressing the RESET control cycles the message center through each of the language choices.

3. Press and hold the RESET control to set the language choice.

### *Easy entry/exit (if equipped)*

This feature automatically moves the drivers seat backwards for easy exit from the vehicle.

1. To disable/enable the easy entry/exit seat feature, select this function from the SETUP control for the current display mode.

2. Press the RESET control to turn the easy entry/exit seat ON or OFF.

### *Reverse Sensing System (Park aid) (if equipped)*

This feature sounds a warning tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper, and functions only when R (Reverse) gear is selected.

1. Select this function from the SETUP menu to disable the reverse sensing system feature.

2. Press the RESET control to turn the rear park assist OFF. When R (Reverse) gear is selected, PARK AID off will be displayed.

### *System warnings*

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for several seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the RESET control and clearing the warning message.

Warning messages that have been reset are divided into three categories:

- They will not disappear until a condition is changed.
- They will reappear on the display 10 minutes from the reset.
- They will not reappear until an ignition off/on cycle has been completed.

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

| Warnings | Status |
|---|---|
| Driver's door ajar | Warning cannot be reset (CLOSE DOOR TO RESET) will be displayed |
| Passenger door ajar | |
| Left rear door ajar | |
| Right rear door ajar | |
| Park brake engaged | RELEASE PARK BRAKE will be displayed |

| Warnings | Status |
|---|---|
| Low fuel level | Warning returns after 10 minutes |
| Check brake system | |
| Check park aid (if equipped) | Warning returns after the ignition key is turned from off to on |
| Brake fluid level low | |
| Low tire pressure | |
| Tire pressure monitor fault | |
| Tire pressure sensor fault | |
| Trunk ajar | |
| Remove objects near pass seat | |
| Compass error | |
| Intkey could not program | Maximum number of Integrated Keys exceeded |

**DRIVER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the driver's door is not completely closed.

**PASSENGER DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the passenger side door is not completely closed.

**REAR LEFT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear left door is not completely closed.

**REAR RIGHT DOOR AJAR** — Displayed when the rear right door is not completely closed.

**PARK BRAKE ENGAGED** — Displayed when the park brake is engaged. If the warning stays on after the park brake is off, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM** — Displayed when the brake system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

**FUEL LEVEL LOW** — Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

**BRAKE FLUID LEVEL LOW** — Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

**CHECK PARK AID(if equipped)** — Displayed when the transmission is in R (Reverse) and the Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid) is disabled. Refer to *Reverse Sensing System (Park Aid)* in this section to enable.

**LOW TIRE PRESSURE** — Displayed when one or more tires on your vehicle have low tire pressure. Refer to *Inflating your tires* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter.

**TIRE PRESSURE MONITOR FAULT** — Displayed when the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is malfunctioning. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**TIRE PRESSURE SENSOR FAULT** — Displayed when a tire pressure sensor is malfunctioning, or your spare tire is in use. For more information on how the system operates under these conditions, refer to *Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer.

**TRUNK AJAR** — Displayed when the trunk is not completely closed.

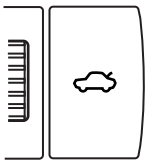
**REMOVE OBJECTS NEAR PASS SEAT** — Displayed when objects are by the passenger seat. After the objects are moved away from the seat, if the warning stays on or continues to come on contact your authorized dealer.

**INTKEY COULD NOT PROGRAM** — Displayed when an attempt is made to program a fifth Integrated Key to the Remote Key Entry System. For more information on Integrated Key, refer to *Locks and Security* chapter in this manual.

**COMPASS ERROR (if equipped)** — Displayed when the compass is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

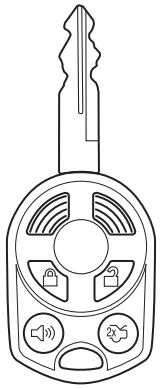
### INTERIOR TRUNK CONTROL

Press the remote trunk release control on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.



## KEYS

Your vehicle is equipped with two Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs). The IKT functions as both a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts the vehicle, and a remote keyless entry transmitter.

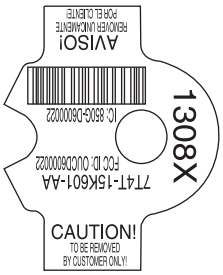


Your IKTs are programmed to your vehicle; using a non-programmed key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your authorized dealer supplied IKTs, replacement IKTs are available through your authorized dealer. Standard SecuriLock™ keys without remote entry transmitter functionality can also be purchased from your authorized dealer if desired.

Always carry a spare key with you in case of an emergency.

For more information regarding programming replacement IKTs, refer to the *SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system* section later in this chapter.

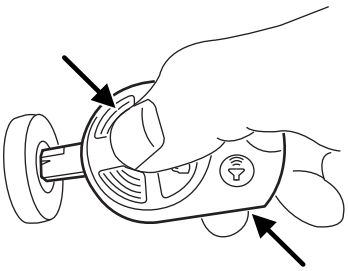
**Note:** Your vehicle's IKTs were issued with a security label on them that provides important vehicle key cut information. It is recommended that you maintain the label in a safe place for future reference, such as the inside front cover of this *Owner's Guide*.



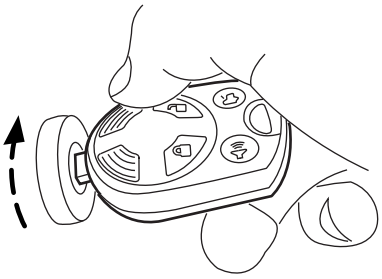
### Recommended handling of the Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (IKT)

To avoid inadvertently activating the remote entry functions of your vehicle, it is recommended that the Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (IKT) be handled properly when starting and turning off your vehicle.

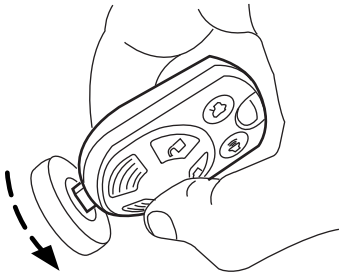
When inserting the IKT into the ignition cylinder, place your thumb on the center thumb rest of the IKT and forefinger on the logo badge on the opposite side.



To gain more leverage when rotating the IKT in the ignition lock cylinder, you can readjust the location of your thumb to grasp the IKT on the outer edge next to the control.

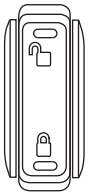


Likewise, when rotating the IKT to the off position in the ignition lock cylinder, the bottom edge of the IKT adjacent to the control can be utilized.



## POWER DOOR LOCKS

- Press the control to unlock all doors.
- Press the control to lock all doors.



### Smart locks

This feature attempts to help prevent you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open one of the front doors and you lock the vehicle with the power door lock control (on the driver or passenger door trim panel), all the doors will lock, then all doors will automatically unlock reminding you that your key is still in the ignition.

The vehicle can still be locked, with the key in the ignition, using the manual lock control on the door, locking the driver's door with a key, or using the lock control on the remote entry transmitter portion of your Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.

If both front doors are closed, the vehicle can be locked from any method, regardless of whether the key is in the ignition or not.

### Power door lock/unlock inhibit feature

As a theft deterrent, the power door lock controls and the interior trunk release control can be disabled 20 seconds after the ignition has been turned to the off position and the vehicle is locked using any of the following:

- Remote entry transmitter portion of your Integrated Keyhead Transmitter,
- Keyless entry keypad (if equipped), or
- Driver power door lock control (**Note:** The driver's door must be open, then closed).

The door lock controls are reenabled when any of the following occurs:

- Unlock using the remote entry transmitter portion of your IKT,
- Unlock using the keyless entry keypad (if equipped),
- Opening any door from the interior of the vehicle, or
- Turning the key in the ignition to the on position.

**Note:** This feature is configured off by default. This feature can be turned on or off using the following procedure:

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. Press the power door lock control on the door panel two times within five seconds. The horn will chirp one time to confirm the feature is off; the horn will chirp one time and honk one time to confirm the feature is on.
7. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm the programming mode has been exited.

Repeat the procedure to turn the feature on or off.

### Autolock feature

The autolock feature will lock all the doors when:

- all the doors are closed,
- the ignition is in the on position,
- you shift into any gear putting the vehicle in motion, and
- the vehicle attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

The autolock feature repeats when:

- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the on position and the vehicle speed is 9 mph (15 km/h) or lower, and
- the vehicle then attains a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).

**Note:** The autolock feature is not available on vehicles equipped with a manual transmission

### *Deactivating/activating autolock feature*

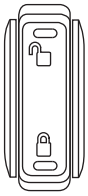
Your vehicle comes with the autolock features activated; there are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence, or
- by using the keyless entry pad (if equipped).

**Note:** The autolock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autounlock feature.

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

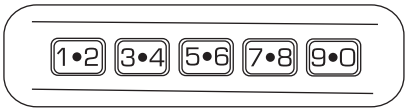
1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.



2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. To enable/disable the autolock feature, press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### *Keyless entry keypad procedure*

1. Turn the ignition to the 1 off position.




2. Close all the doors.
3. Enter factory–set 5–digit entry code.
4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4 press the 7 • 8.
5. Release the 7 • 8.
6. Release the 3 • 4.

The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

### *Autounlock feature*

The autounlock feature will unlock all the doors when:

- the ignition is in the on position, all the doors are closed, and the vehicle has been in motion at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h);
- the vehicle has then come to a stop and the ignition is turned to the off or accessory position; and
- the driver door is opened within 10 minutes of the ignition being transitioned to the off or accessory position.

**Note:** The doors will not autounlock if the vehicle has been electronically locked before the driver door is opened.

**Note:** The autounlock feature is disabled on vehicles equipped with a manual transmission.

### *Deactivating/activating autounlock feature*

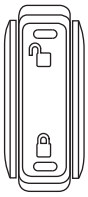
Your vehicle comes with the autounlock features activated; there are three methods to enable/disable this feature:

- Through your authorized dealer,
- by using a power door unlock/lock sequence, or
- by using the keyless entry keypad (if equipped).

**Note:** The autounlock feature can be activated/deactivated independently of the autolock feature.

Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the off position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.

1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the on position.



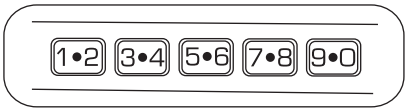
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the on position to the off position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.

5. Turn the ignition back to the on position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.

6. To enable/disable the autounlock feature, press the lock control, then press the unlock control. The horn will chirp once if autounlock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autounlock was activated.

7. Turn the ignition to the off position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### *Keyless entry keypad procedure*




1. Turn the ignition to the 1 off position.

2. Close all the doors.

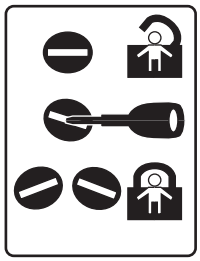
3. Enter factory–set 5–digit entry code.

4. Press and hold the 3 • 4. While holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8. While still holding the 3 • 4, press and release the 7 • 8 a second time.

5. Release the 3 • 4.

The user should receive a **horn chirp** to indicate the system has been disabled or a chirp followed by a honk to indicate the system has been enabled.

## CHILDPROOF DOOR LOCKS



- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Insert the key and turn to the lock position (key at an angle) to engage the childproof locks.
- Insert the key and turn to the unlock position (key horizontal) to disengage the childproof locks.

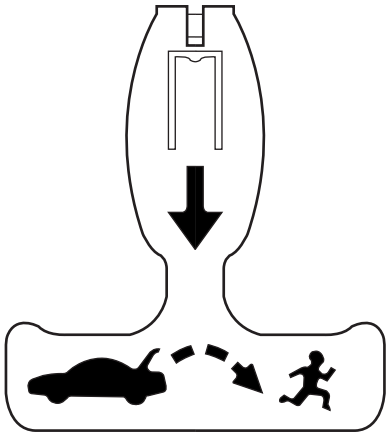
### INTERIOR LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT RELEASE

Your vehicle is equipped with a mechanical interior luggage compartment release handle that provides a means of escape for children and adults in the event they become locked inside the luggage compartment.

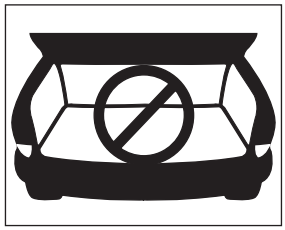
Adults are advised to familiarize themselves with the operation and location of the release handle.

To open the luggage compartment door (lid) from within the luggage compartment, pull the illuminated "T" shaped handle and push up on the trunk lid. The handle is composed of a material that will glow for hours in darkness following brief exposure to ambient light.

The "T" shaped handle will be located either on the luggage compartment door (lid) or inside the luggage compartment near the tail lamps.



**WARNING:** Keep vehicle doors and luggage compartment locked and keep keys and remote transmitters out of a child's reach. Unsupervised children could lock themselves in the trunk and risk injury. Children should be taught not to play in vehicles.



**WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or animals unattended in the vehicle. On hot days, the temperature in the trunk or vehicle interior can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat-related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.

## REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM

The Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (IKT) complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

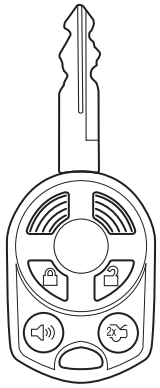
**Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.**

The typical operating range for your IKT is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The IKT allows you to:

- remotely unlock the vehicle doors.
- remotely lock all the vehicle doors.
- remotely open the trunk.
- activate the personal alarm.
- arm and disarm the perimeter anti-theft system.
- operate the illuminated entry feature.



The remote entry lock/unlock feature operates in any ignition position except while the key is held in the start position. The panic feature operates with the key in the off position.

If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL Integrated Keyhead Transmitters** with you to the authorized dealer in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

### Unlocking the doors/two stage unlock

1. Press and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate.
2. Press and release again within five seconds to unlock all the doors.

The remote entry system activates the illuminated entry feature; this feature turns on the lamps for 25 seconds or until the ignition is turned to the on position.

The inside lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on using the dimmer control or
- any door is open.

The battery saver feature will turn off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition is turned to the off position.

Two stage unlocking may be disabled or re-enabled by simultaneously pressing the and controls on the IKT for four seconds (disabling two stage unlock allows all vehicle doors to unlock simultaneously). The turn lamps will flash twice to indicate that two-stage unlock was enabled or disabled.

### Locking the doors

1. Press and release to lock all the doors. The turn lamps will flash.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash once if all the doors and trunk are closed.

**Note:** If any door or the trunk is not closed, or if the hood is not closed in vehicles equipped with the perimeter alarm feature, the horn will chirp twice and the lamps will not flash.

### Car finder

Press twice within three seconds. The horn will chirp and the turn lamps will flash. It is recommended that this method be used to locate your vehicle, rather than using the panic alarm.

### Sounding a panic alarm

Press to activate the alarm. The horn will sound and the turn lamps will flash for a maximum of three minutes. Press again or turn the ignition to the on position to deactivate, or wait for the alarm to time out in three minutes.

**Note:** The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is in the off position.

### Opening the trunk

Press twice within three seconds to open the trunk.

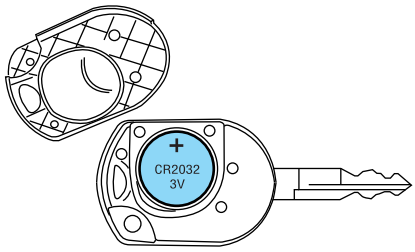
- Ensure that the trunk is closed and latched before driving your vehicle. Failure to properly latch the trunk may cause objects to fall out or block the driver's rear view.

### Replacing the battery

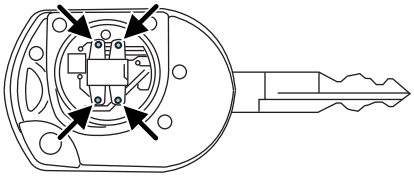
The Integrated Keyhead Transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin in the slot of the IKT near the key ring in order to remove the battery cover.




2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.



3. Remove the old battery. **Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the instructions inside the IKT for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the battery cover back onto the key.

**Note:** Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the IKT to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The IKT should operate normally after battery replacement.

### Replacing lost Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs)

If you would like to have your Integrated Keyhead Transmitters reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional IKTs, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all IKTs** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

#### *How to reprogram your Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs)*

To program a new Integrated Keyhead Transmitter yourself, refer to *Programming spare keys* in the *SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system* section of this chapter. **Note:** At least two IKTs are required to perform this procedure yourself.

### Illuminated entry

The interior lamps and puddle lamps (if equipped) illuminate when the Integrated Keyhead Transmitter is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the interior lights if:

- the ignition is turned to the on position,
- the Integrated Keyhead Transmitter lock control is pressed,
- The vehicle is locked using the keyless entry keypad (if equipped), or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

The inside lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

### Perimeter lamps illuminated entry

With the Integrated Keyhead Transmitter system, the following items will illuminate when the control on the transmitter is pressed:

- Head lamps
- Park lamps
- Tail lamps

The lamps will automatically turn off:

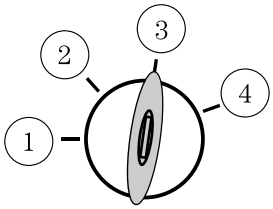
- if the ignition switch is turned to the 3 (on) position,
- The vehicle is locked using the keyless entry keypad (if equipped), or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

**Note:** On some vehicles, the perimeter lamps illuminated entry feature will not activate in daylight conditions.

#### *Deactivating/activating perimeter lamps illuminated entry*

You may enable/disable this feature by having your vehicle serviced by your authorized dealer.

You may also perform the following power door lock sequence to enable/disable the perimeter lamps feature. **Note:** Before starting, ensure the ignition is in the 1 (off) position and all vehicle doors are closed. You must complete Steps 1–5 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, wait a minimum of 30 seconds before beginning again.




1. Place the key in the ignition and turn the ignition to the 3 (on) position.
2. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the 3 (on) position to the 1 (off) position.
4. Press the power door unlock control on the door panel three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the 3 (on) position. The horn will chirp one time to confirm programming mode has been entered and is active.
6. Press the power door unlock control twice within five seconds.
**Note:** The horn will chirp once to indicate the perimeter lighting feature has been deactivated. The horn will chirp once and honk once (one short and one long) to indicate the perimeter lighting feature has been activated.
7. Turn the ignition to the 1 (off) position to exit the procedure.
**Note:** The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

### Illuminated exit

- When all vehicle doors are closed and the key is removed from the ignition, the interior dome lamps (and the exterior mirror puddle lamps, if equipped) will illuminate.

The lights will turn off if all the doors remain closed and

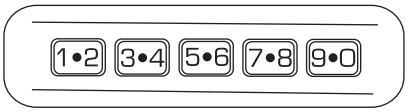
- 25 seconds elapse, or
- the key is inserted in the ignition.

#### *Battery saver*

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the 1 (off) position.

- If the dome lamps were turned on using the panel dimmer control, the battery saver will shut them off 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the 1 (off) position.
- If the courtesy lamps were turned on because one of the vehicle doors or the trunk was opened, the battery saver will shut off them off 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the 1 (off) position.
- The battery saver will shut off the headlamps 10 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the 1 (off) position.

## KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)




You can use the keyless entry keypad to:

- lock or unlock the doors without using a key.
- open the trunk.

The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5–digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create up to three of your own 5–digit personal entry codes.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

### Programming a personal entry code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.
4. The doors will lock then unlock to confirm that your personal keycode has been programmed to the module.

**Tips:**

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.

### Erasing personal code

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

All personal codes are now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

### Anti-scan feature

If the wrong code has been entered seven times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the control on the remote entry transmitter portion of your Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.
- the ignition is turned on.

### Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

**To unlock the driver's door,** enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate. **Note:** If the two-stage unlocking feature is disabled, all doors will unlock; for more information regarding two-stage unlocking, refer to the *Unlocking the doors/Two stage unlock* section earlier in this chapter.

**To unlock all doors,** enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

**To open the trunk,** enter the factory set code or your personal code, then press the 5 • 6 control within five seconds.

**To lock all doors,** press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time (with the driver's door closed). You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first.

## SECURILOCK™ PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system is an engine immobilization system. This system is designed to help prevent the engine from being started unless a **coded Integrated Keyhead Transmitter (IKT) programmed to your vehicle** is used. The use of the wrong type of coded key may lead to a "no-start" condition.

Your vehicle comes with two coded Integrated Keyhead Transmitters; additional coded IKTs may be purchased from your authorized dealer. Standard SecuriLock™ keys without remote entry transmitter functionality can also be purchased from your authorized dealer if desired. The authorized dealer can program your spare IKTs to your vehicle or you can program the IKTs yourself. Refer to *Programming spare keys* for instructions on how to program the coded key.

**Note:** The SecuriLock™ passive anti-theft system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems. Use of these systems may result in vehicle starting problems and a loss of security protection.

**Note:** Large metallic objects, electronic devices that are used to purchase gasoline or similar items, or a second coded key on the same key chain may cause vehicle starting issues. You need to prevent these objects from touching the coded IKT while starting the engine. These objects will not cause damage to the coded IKT, but may cause a momentary issue if they are too close to the IKT when starting the engine. If a problem occurs, turn the ignition off, remove all objects on the key chain away from the coded IKT and restart the engine.

**Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in the vehicle. Always take your keys and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle.**

### Anti-theft indicator

The anti-theft indicator is located in the instrument panel cluster.

- When the ignition is in the off position, the indicator will flash once every two seconds to indicate the SecuriLock™ system is functioning as a theft deterrent.
- When the ignition is in the on position, the indicator will glow for three seconds to indicate normal system functionality.

If a problem occurs with the SecuriLock™ system, the indicator will flash rapidly or glow steadily when the ignition is in the on position. If this occurs, the vehicle will not start and should be taken to an authorized dealer for service.

### Automatic arming

The vehicle is armed immediately after switching the ignition to the off position.

The theft indicator will flash every two seconds to act as a theft deterrent when the vehicle is armed.

### Automatic disarming

The vehicle is disarmed immediately after the ignition is turned to the on position.

The theft indicator will illuminate for three seconds and then go out. If the theft indicator stays on for an extended period of time or flashes rapidly, have the system serviced by your authorized dealer.

### Replacement Integrated Keyless Transmitters (IKT) and coded keys

**Note:** Your vehicle comes equipped with two Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs). The IKT functions as both a programmed ignition key that operates all the locks and starts the vehicle, as well as a remote keyless entry transmitter. A maximum of eight coded keys can be programmed to your vehicle; only four of these eight keys can be IKTs with remote entry functionality.

If your IKTs or standard SecuriLock™ coded keys are lost or stolen and you don't have an extra coded key, you will need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. The key codes need to be erased from your vehicle and new coded keys will need to be programmed.

Replacing coded keys can be very costly. Store an extra programmed key away from the vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconveniences. Please visit an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement keys.

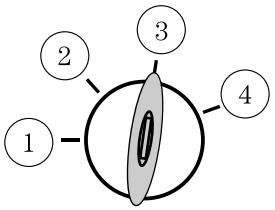
### Programming spare keys

You can program your own Integrated Keyhead Transmitters or standard SecuriLock™ coded keys to your vehicle. This procedure will program both the engine immobilizer keycode and the remote entry transmitter portion of the IKT to your vehicle. **Note:** A maximum of eight coded keys can be programmed to your vehicle; only four of these eight can be IKTs with remote entry functionality.

**Tips:**

- Only use Integrated Keyhead Transmitters (IKTs) or standard SecuriLock™ keys.
- You must have two previously programmed coded keys (keys that already operate your vehicle's engine) and the new unprogrammed key(s) readily accessible.
- If two previously programmed coded keys are not available, you must take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the spare key(s) programmed.

Please read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.




1. Insert the first previously programmed **coded key** into the ignition.

2. Turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.

3. Turn the ignition to the 1 (off) position and remove the first **coded key** from the ignition.

4. Within 10 seconds of turning the ignition to the 1 (off) position, insert the second previously **coded key** into the ignition.

5. Turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least three seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.

6. Turn the ignition to the 1 (off) position and remove the second previously programmed **coded key** from the ignition.

7. Within 20 seconds of turning the ignition to the 1 (off) position and removing the previously programmed **coded key,** insert the new unprogrammed key (new key/valet key) into the ignition.

8. Turn the ignition from the 1 (off) position to the 3 (on) position. Keep the ignition in the 3 (on) position for at least six seconds.

9. Remove the newly programmed **coded key** from the ignition.

If the key has been successfully programmed it will start the vehicle's engine and will operate the remote entry system (if the new key is an Integrated Keyhead Transmitter). The theft indicator light will illuminate for three seconds and then go out to indicate successful programming.

If the key was not successfully programmed, it will not start your vehicle's engine and/or will not operate the remote entry features. The theft indicator light may flash on and off. Wait 20 seconds and you may repeat Steps 1 through 8. If failure repeats, bring your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have the new key(s) programmed.

To program additional new unprogrammed key(s), wait 20 seconds and then repeat this procedure from Step 1.

## PERIMETER ALARM SYSTEM

The perimeter anti-theft system will help protect your vehicle from unauthorized entry.

If there is any potential perimeter anti-theft problem with your vehicle, ensure **ALL Integrated Keyhead Transmitters** are brought to the authorized dealer to aid in troubleshooting.

### Arming the system

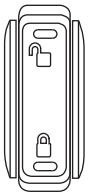
When armed, this system will respond if unauthorized entry is attempted. When unauthorized entry occurs, the system will flash the turn signal lamps and will sound the horn.

The system is ready to arm whenever the key is in the 1 (off) position, or is removed from the ignition. Either of the following actions will prearm the alarm system:

- Press the control on the remote entry transmitter portion of your Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.

When you press the lock control twice within three seconds on the remote entry transmitter portion of your IKT, the horn will chirp once to let you know that all doors, the hood and the trunk are closed. If any of these are not closed, the horn will chirp twice to warn you that a door, the hood or the trunk is still open.

- Press the driver or passenger interior door lock control while the door is open, then close the door.
- Press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry keypad (if equipped) at the same time to lock the doors (driver's door must be closed).



There is a 20 second countdown when any of the above actions occur before the vehicle becomes armed.

Each door, the hood or the trunk is armed individually, and if any are open, they must be closed for the system to enter the 20 second countdown.

The turn signal lamps will flash once when all doors, the hood and the trunk are closed indicating the vehicle is locked and entering the 20 second countdown.

### Disarming the system

You can disarm the system by any of the following actions:

- Unlock the doors by using the remote entry transmitter portion of your Integrated Keyhead Transmitter.
- Unlocking the doors using the keyless entry keypad (if equipped).
- Unlock the driver's door with a key. Turn the key full rearward (toward the rear of the vehicle) to ensure the alarm disarms.
- Turn ignition to the 3 (on) position with a valid SecuriLock™ key.
- Press the panic control on the remote entry transmitter portion of your IKT. This will only shut off the horn and turn lamps when the alarm is sounding. The alarm system will still be armed.

Pressing the power door unlock control within the 20 second prearmed mode will return the vehicle to a disarmed state.

#### *Triggering the anti-theft system*

The armed system will be triggered if:

- Any door, the hood or the trunk is opened without using the door key or the remote entry transmitter portion of your IKT.
- The ignition is turned to the 3 (on) position with an invalid SecuriLock™ key.

## SEATING

**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

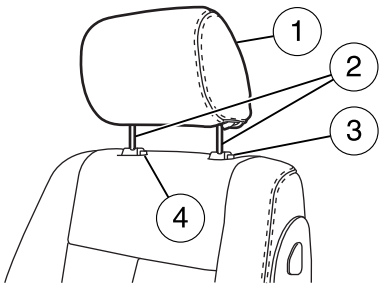
### Adjustable head restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with front row outboard head restraints that are vertically adjustable.

**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, the driver and passenger occupants should not sit in and/or operate the vehicle, until the head restraint is placed in its proper position. The driver should never adjust the head restraint while the vehicle is in motion.

The adjustable head restraints consist of :

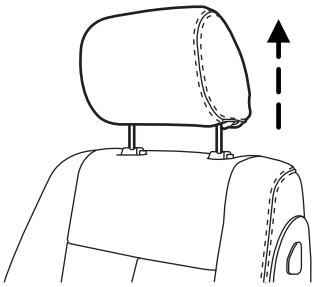
- a trimmed energy absorbing foam and structure (1),
- two steel stems (2),
- a guide sleeve adjust/release button (3),
- and a guide sleeve unlock/remove button (4).



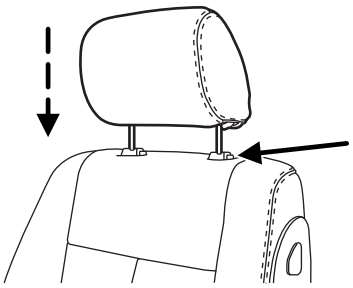
To adjust the head restraint, do the following:

1. Adjust the seatback to an upright driving/riding position.

2. Raise the head restraint by pulling up on the head restraint.



3. Lower the head restraint by pressing and holding the guide sleeve adjust/release button and pushing down on the head restraint.

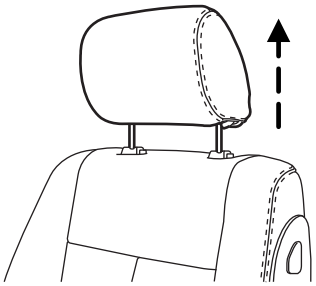


Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.

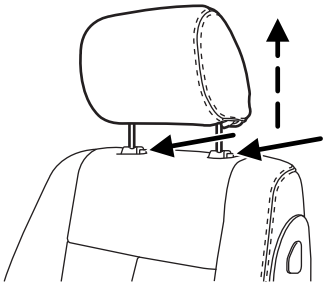
**WARNING:** The adjustable head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied.

To remove the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches the highest adjustment position.

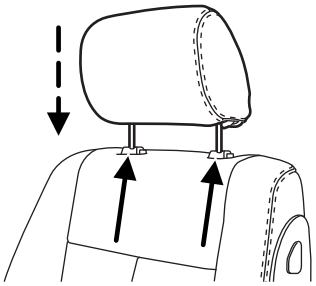


2. Simultaneously press and hold both the adjust/release button and the unlock/remove button, then pull up on the head restraint.



To reinstall the adjustable head restraint, do the following:

1. Insert the two stems into the guide sleeve collars.
2. Push the head restraint down until it locks.



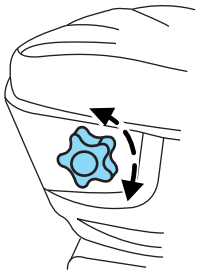
Properly adjust the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is even with the top of your head and positioned as close as possible to the back of your head. For occupants of extremely tall stature, adjust the head restraint to its full up position.

**WARNING:** To minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash, head restraints must be installed properly.

### Using the manual lumbar support (if equipped)

The lumbar control is located on the side of the seat cushion.

Turn to adjust lumbar support.

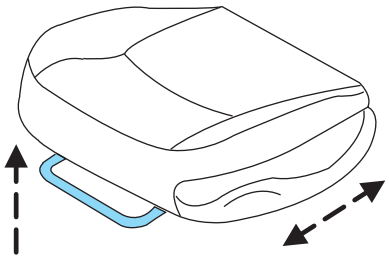


### Adjusting the front manual seat (if equipped)

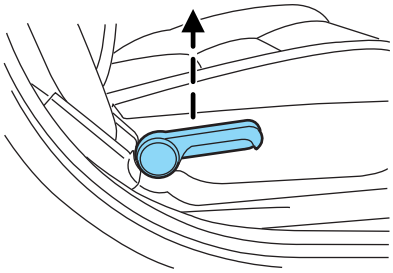
**WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

Lift handle to move seat forward or backward.



Pull lever up to adjust seatback.



### Folding down the front passenger seatback (if equipped)

The front passenger seatback can be folded to a horizontal position to make room for a long load. To fold the seatback:

1. Move the seat as far back as possible.
2. Push the head restraint release button and move the head restraint fully down.
3. Pull up on the recliner handle located on the outboard side of the seat.
4. Without releasing the handle, push the back of the seat forward until flat.
5. Move the seat as far forward as possible.

**WARNING:** Cover sharp edges on the load to help prevent injury to occupants. Secure the load to help prevent shifting during sudden stops.

**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

### Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)

**WARNING:** Never adjust the driver's seat or seatback when the vehicle is moving.

**WARNING:** Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

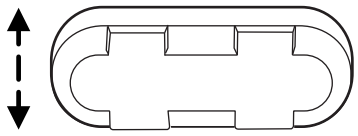
**WARNING:** Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash. Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

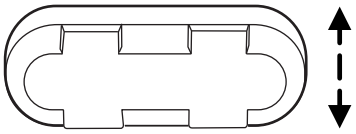
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of possible serious injury: Do not hang objects off seat back or stow objects in the seatback map pocket (if equipped) when a child is in the front passenger seat. Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped). Check the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp for proper airbag status. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* section for additional details. Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

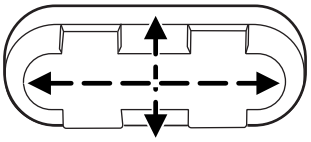
Move the switch in the direction of the arrows to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.



Move the switch in the direction of the arrows to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.



Press the switch in the direction of the arrows to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.



### Heated seats (if equipped)

**WARNING:** Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions, must exercise care when using the seat heater. The seat heater may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion, because this may cause the seat heater to overheat. Do not puncture the seat with pins, needles, or other pointed objects because this may damage the heating element which may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat may cause serious personal injury.

**Note:** Do not do the following:

- Place heavy objects on the seat
- Operate the seat heater if water or any other liquid is spilled on the seat. Allow the seat to dry thoroughly.

The heated seats will only function when the ignition is in the on position.

To operate the heated seats:

- Push the control located on the climate control system panel once to activate high heat.

- Push twice to activate low heat.
- Push a third time to deactivate.

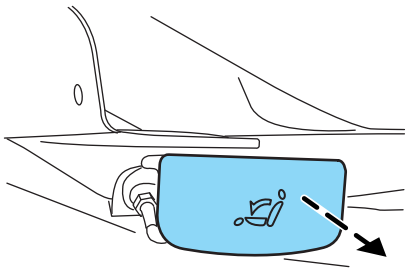
The indicator light on the control will illuminate when activated. For low heat, one light will be lit; for high heat, both lights will be lit.

## REAR SEATS

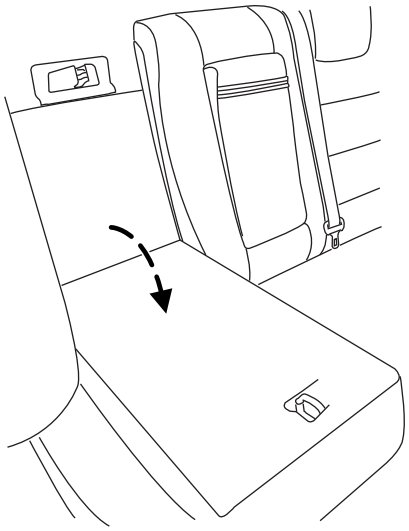
### Split-folding rear seatbacks

One or both rear seatbacks can be folded down to provide additional cargo space.

To lower the seatback(s), pull the release handle(s) located inside the trunk.



Fold the seatback(s) down.

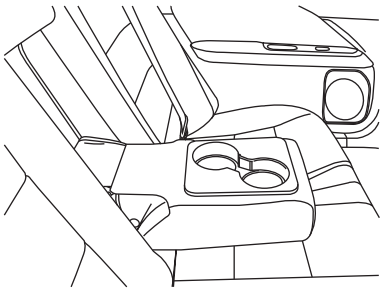


**WARNING:** Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped behind the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

Make sure that the safety belt for the rear center passenger is properly routed over the rear seatback.

### Seat-mounted cup holders and armrest storage compartment

Your vehicle may be equipped with cup holders in the rear seat armrest. To access the cup holders, fold the armrest down.



**WARNING:** Use only soft cups in the cup holder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

## SAFETY RESTRAINTS

### Personal Safety System™

The Personal Safety System™ provides an improved overall level of frontal crash protection to front seat occupants and is designed to help further reduce the risk of airbag-related injuries. The system is able to analyze different occupant conditions and crash severity before activating the appropriate safety devices to help better protect a range of occupants in a variety of frontal crash situations.

Your vehicle's Personal Safety System™ consists of:

- Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints.
- Front outboard safety belts with pretensioners, energy management retractors (first row only), and safety belt usage sensors.
- Driver's seat position sensor.
- Front passenger sensing system
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp
- Front crash severity sensor.
- Restraints Control Module (RCM) with impact and safing sensors.
- Restraint system warning light and back-up tone.
- The electrical wiring for the airbags, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt usage sensors, driver seat position sensor, front passenger sensing system, and indicator lights.

### *How does the Personal Safety System™ work?*

The Personal Safety System™ can adapt the deployment strategy of your vehicle's safety devices according to crash severity and occupant conditions. A collection of crash and occupant sensors provides information to the Restraints Control Module (RCM). During a crash, the RCM may activate the safety belt pretensioners and/or either one or both stages of the dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints based on crash severity and occupant conditions.

The fact that the pretensioners or airbags did not activate for both front seat occupants in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the Personal Safety System™ determined the accident conditions (crash severity, belt usage, etc.) were not appropriate to activate these safety devices. Front airbags are designed to activate only in frontal and near-frontal collisions (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts) unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The pretensioners are designed to activate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, and in side collisions.

### *Driver and passenger dual-stage airbag supplemental restraints*

The dual-stage airbags offer the capability to tailor the level of airbag inflation energy. A lower, less forceful energy level is provided for more common, moderate-severity impacts. A higher energy level is used for the most severe impacts. Refer to *Airbag supplemental restraints (SRS)* section in this chapter.

### *Front crash severity sensor*

The front crash severity sensor enhances the ability to detect the severity of an impact. Positioned up front, it provides valuable information early in the crash event on the severity of the impact. This allows your Personal Safety System™ to distinguish between different levels of crash severity and modify the deployment strategy of the dual-stage airbags and safety belt pretensioners.

### *Driver's seat position sensor*

The driver's seat position sensor allows your Personal Safety System™ to tailor the deployment level of the driver dual-stage airbag based on seat position. The system is designed to help protect smaller drivers sitting close to the driver airbag by providing a lower airbag output level.

### *Front passenger sensing system*

For airbags to do their job they must inflate with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk to occupants that are very close to the airbag when it begins to inflate. For some occupants, this occurs because they are initially sitting very close to the airbag. For other occupants, this occurs when the occupant is not properly restrained by safety belts or child safety seats and they move forward during pre-crash braking. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary injuries is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are much safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front.

**WARNING:** Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

The front passenger sensing system can automatically turn off the front passenger airbag and passenger seat-mounted side airbag. The system is designed to help protect small (child size) occupants from frontal airbag deployments when they are seated or restrained in the front passenger seat contrary to proper child-seating or restraint usage recommendations. Even with this technology, parents are **STRONGLY** encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat. The sensor also turns off the passenger front airbag and passenger seat-mounted side airbag when the passenger seat is empty and the safety belt is unbuckled, or when a child or a small person occupies the front passenger seat and the safety belt is unbuckled.

### *Front safety belt usage sensors*

The front safety belt usage sensors detect whether or not the driver and front outboard passenger safety belts are fastened. This information allows your Personal Safety System™ to tailor the airbag deployment and safety belt pretensioner activation depending upon safety belt usage.

### *Front safety belt pretensioners*

The safety belt pretensioners at the front outboard seating positions are designed to tighten the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body during frontal collisions and in side collisions when the side curtains and side airbags are activated. This helps increase the effectiveness of the safety belts. In frontal collisions, the safety belt pretensioners can be activated alone or, if the collision is of sufficient severity, together with the front airbags.

### *Front safety belt energy management retractors*

The front outboard safety belt energy management retractors allow webbing to be pulled out of the retractor in a gradual and controlled manner in response to the occupant's forward momentum. This helps reduce the risk of force-related injuries to the occupant's chest by limiting the load on the occupant. Refer to *Energy management feature- front outboard* section in this chapter.

### *Determining if the Personal Safety System™ is operational*

The Personal Safety System™ uses a warning light in the instrument cluster or a back-up tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning lights and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the Personal Safety System™ is not required.

The Restraints Control Module (RCM) monitors its own internal circuits and the circuits for the airbag supplemental restraints, crash sensor(s), safety belt pretensioners, front safety belt buckle sensors, driver seat position sensor, and front passenger sensing system. In addition, the RCM also monitors the restraints warning light in the instrument cluster. A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following.

- The warning light will either flash or stay lit.
- The warning light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and warning light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the Personal Safety System™ serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### Safety belt precautions

**WARNING:** Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit where they can be properly restrained.

**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

**WARNING:** It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

**WARNING:** In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

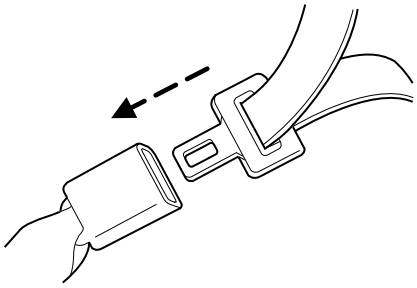
**WARNING:** Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

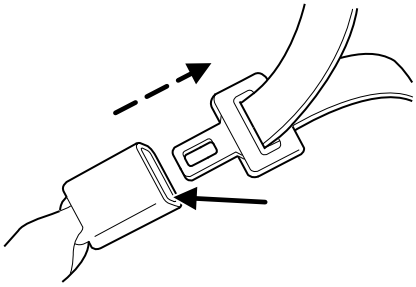
**WARNING:** Front and rear seat occupants, including pregnant women, should wear safety belts for optimum protection in an accident.

### Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



2. To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



All restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts.

While you are fastened in the safety belt, the combination lap/shoulder belt adjusts to your movement. However, if you brake hard, turn hard, or if your vehicle receives an impact of 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the safety belt will become locked and help reduce your forward movement.

### Energy management feature — front outboard

- This vehicle has a safety belt system with an energy management feature at the front seats to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The energy management feature has a retractor assembly that is designed to extend the safety belt webbing in a controlled manner. This helps reduce the belt force acting on the user's chest.

**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and replace if necessary the belt and retractor assembly after an accident could increase the risk of injury in a collision.

All safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. All of the passenger combination lap and shoulder belts have two types of locking modes described below:

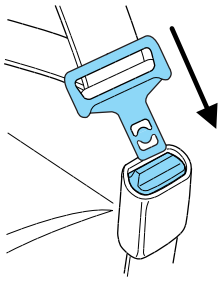
### Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

### Automatic locking mode

#### *How to use the automatic locking mode*

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

### *When to use the automatic locking mode*

In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat, except a booster, is installed in passenger front or rear seating positions. Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

### *How to disengage the automatic locking mode*

**WARNING:** Ford Motor Company recommends that all passenger safety belt assemblies and attaching hardware should be inspected by an authorized dealer after any collision to verify that the "automatic locking retractor" feature for child seats is still working properly. Safety belt assemblies should be inspected by an authorized dealer and must be replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

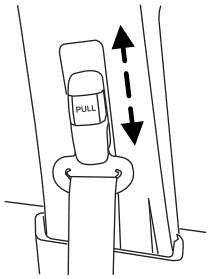
### Safety belt pretensioner

Your vehicle is equipped with safety belt pretensioners at the driver and front outboard passenger seating positions.

The safety belt pretensioner tightens the safety belts firmly against the occupant's body at the start of the crash.

**WARNING:** The driver and front passenger safety belt system (including retractors, buckles and height adjusters) must be replaced if the vehicle is involved in a collision that results in deployment of front airbags, seat-mounted side airbags and side air curtains, and safety belt pretensioners.

### Safety belt height adjustment




Your vehicle has safety belt height adjustments at the front outboard seating positions. Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

To adjust the shoulder belt height, pull on the center button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

**WARNING:** Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

### Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is an 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from an authorized dealer.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

**WARNING:** Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

### Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

### Conditions of operation

| If... | Then... |
|---|---|
| The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position... | The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds. |
| The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding... | The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off. |
| The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position... | The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off. |

### Belt-Minder®

The Belt-Minder® feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster when the driver's and front passenger's safety belt is unbuckled.

The Belt-Minder® feature uses information from the front passenger sensing system to determine if a front seat passenger is present and therefore potentially in need of a warning. To avoid activating the Belt-Minder® feature for objects placed in the front passenger seat, warnings will only be given to large front seat occupants as determined by the front passenger sensing system.

Both the driver's and passenger's safety belt usages are monitored and either may activate the Belt-Minder® feature. The warnings are the same for the driver and the front passenger. If the Belt-Minder® warnings have expired (warnings for approximately five minutes) for one occupant (driver or front passenger), the other occupant can still activate the Belt-Minder® feature.

When the Belt-Minder® feature is activated, the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled.

The Belt-Minder® feature uses two different warning chimes. During the first minute of activation, the warning chime will sound once every second. The remaining warning chimes will sound twice every second while the system is activated.

| If... | Then... |
|---|---|
| The driver's and front passenger's safety belts are buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the on position or less than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned on... | The Belt-Minder® feature will not activate. |
| The driver's or front passenger's safety belt is not buckled when the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on... | The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled. |
| The driver's or front passenger's safety belt becomes unbuckled for approximately 1 minute while the vehicle is traveling at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and more than 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to on... | The Belt-Minder® feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for six seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately five minutes or until the safety belts are buckled. |

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts (All statistics based on U.S. data):

| Reasons given... | Consider... |
|---|---|
| "Crashes are rare events" | **36700 crashes occur every day.** The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. *1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.* |
| "I'm not going far" | **3 of 4** fatal crashes occur within **25** miles (40 km) of home. |
| "Belts are uncomfortable" | We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort. |
| "I was in a hurry" | **Prime time for an accident.** Belt-Minder® reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up. |
| "Safety belts don't work" | **Safety belts,** when used properly, **reduce risk of death** to front seat occupants by **45% in cars,** and by **60% in light trucks.** |
| "Traffic is light" | **Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes,** many when no other vehicles are around. |
| "Belts wrinkle my clothes" | Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted. |
| "The people I'm with don't wear belts" | Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see. |

| Reasons given... | Consider... |
|---|---|
| "I have an airbag" | Airbags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers. |
| "I'd rather be thrown clear" | Not a good idea. **People** who are **ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE.** Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH". |

**WARNING:** Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt or insert a latchplate into the buckle to avoid the Belt-Minder® chime. To do so may adversely affect the performance of the vehicle's air bag system.

### *One-time disable*

If at any time the driver/front passenger quickly buckles then unbuckles the safety belt for that seating position, the Belt-Minder® is disabled for the current ignition cycle. The Belt-Minder® feature will enable during the same ignition cycle if the occupant buckles and remains buckled for approximately 30 seconds. Confirmation is not given for the one time disable.

### *Deactivating/activating the Belt-Minder® feature*

**The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® are deactivated/activated independently. When deactivating/activating one seating position, do not buckle the other position as this will terminate the process.**

*Read Steps 1 - 4 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.*

**Note**: The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features must be disabled/enabled separately. Both cannot be disable/enabled during the same key cycle.

The driver and front passenger Belt-Minder® features can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- The parking brake is set
- The gearshift is in N (Neutral) (manual transmission)
- The gearshift is in P (Park) (automatic transmission)
- The ignition switch is in the off position
- The driver and front passenger safety belts are unbuckled

**WARNING:** While the design allows you to deactivate your Belt-Minder®, this system is designed to improve your chances of being safely belted and surviving an accident. We recommend you leave the Belt-Minder® system activated for yourself and others who may use the vehicle. To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt-Minder® feature while driving the vehicle.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the on position. DO NOT START THE ENGINE.

2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off (Approximately 1–2 minutes).

- Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

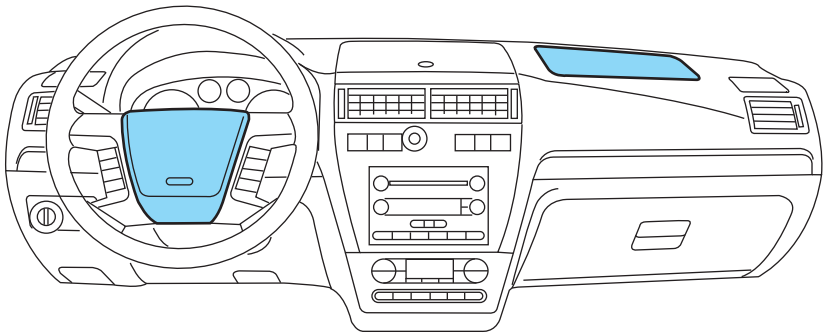
3. For the seating position being disabled, at a moderate speed, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt nine times, ending in the unbuckled state. Step 3 must be completed within 50 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

- After Step 3, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for three seconds.

4. Within approximately seven seconds of the light turning off, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

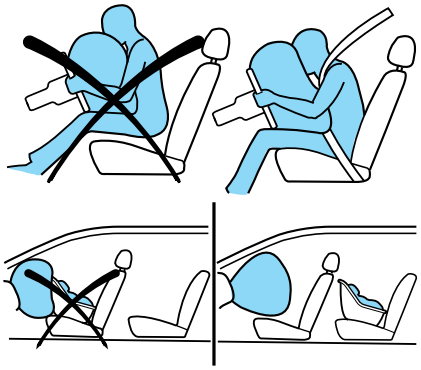
- This will disable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds.
- This will enable the Belt-Minder® feature for that seating position if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash four times per second for three seconds, followed by three seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing four times per second for three seconds again.

## AIRBAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



### Important supplemental restraint system precautions

Airbags DO NOT inflate slowly or gently and the risk of injury from a deploying airbag is greatest close to the trim covering the airbag module.



**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

**WARNING:** When possible, all children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

**WARNING:** National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver airbag module.

**WARNING:** Never place your arm over the airbag module as a deploying airbag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

Steps you can take to properly position yourself away from the airbag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly (one or two degrees) from the upright position.

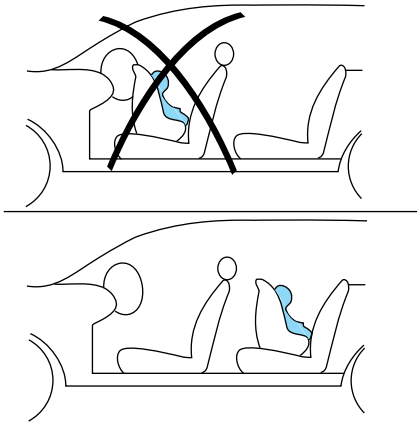
**WARNING:** Do not put anything on or over the airbag module. Placing objects on or over the airbag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the airbag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS) or its fuses. See your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

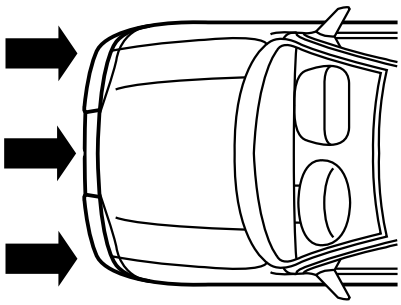
### Children and airbags

Children must always be properly restrained. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.



**WARNING:** Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. **NEVER** place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the seat all the way back.

### How does the safety belt pretensioner and airbag supplemental restraint system work?



The safety belt pretensioner and airbag SRS are designed to activate when the vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates pretensioner activation and airbag inflation.

The fact that the pretensioners and airbags did not activate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Front airbags are designed to activate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts unless the collision causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, contact with a deploying airbag may also cause abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

**WARNING:** If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger airbag modules (which include the inflators and airbags)
- seat-mounted side airbags. Refer to *Seat-mounted side airbag system* later in this chapter
- safety belt pretensioners
- one or more impact and safing sensors

- a readiness light and tone
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components
- Side curtain airbag system. Refer to *Side curtain airbag system* later in this chapter.
- Front passenger sensing system. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.
- "Passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp. Refer to *Front passenger sensing system* later in this chapter.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental airbag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the airbag system readiness light, the airbag back up power, the airbag ignitors and safety belt pretensioners.

### Front passenger sensing system

The front passenger sensing system is designed to meet the regulatory requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 and is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or disabled (will not inflate).

The front passenger sensing system will disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag if:

- the front passenger seat is unoccupied, or has small/medium objects in the front seat.
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint that is installed according to the manufacturer's instructions.
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat.
- a front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time.

The front passenger sensing system will turn off the passenger seat side airbag if:

- the seat is empty and safety belt is unbuckled.
- a child or a small person occupies the front passenger seat and the child or small person is unbuckled.

The front passenger sensing system uses a ″passenger airbag off″ or ″pass airbag off″ indicator which will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled. The indicator lamp is located in the center stack of the instrument panel above the radio.

**Note**: The indicator lamp will illuminate for a short period of time when the ignition is turned to the on position to confirm it is functional.

When the front passenger seat is not occupied (empty seat) or in the event that the front passenger frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable (will not inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag when a rear facing infant seat, a forward-facing child restraint, or a booster seat is detected.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables (will not inflate) the front passenger frontal airbag, the indicator lamp will illuminate and stay lit to remind you that the front passenger frontal airbag is disabled.
- If the child restraint has been installed and the indicator lamp is not lit, then turn the vehicle off, remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the front passenger seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag (may inflate), the indicator lamp will be unlit and stay unlit.

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger's seat, but the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp is lit, it is possible that the person isn't sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the full upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and enable the passenger's frontal airbag.
- If the indicator lamp remains lit even after this, the person should be advised to ride in the rear seat.

| Occupant | Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp | Passenger Airbag |
|---|---|---|
| Empty seat | Unlit | Disabled |
| Small child in child safety seat or booster | Lit | Disabled |
| Small child with safety belt buckled or unbuckled | Lit | Disabled |
| Adult | Unlit | Enabled |

**WARNING:** Even with Advanced Restraints Systems, children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on safety belts, it's very important that they continue to sit properly. A properly seated occupant sits upright, leaning against the seat back, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor. Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

**WARNING:** Sitting improperly out of position or with the seat back reclined too far can take off weight from the seat cushion and affect the decision of the front passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in a crash.
Always sit upright against your seatback, with your feet on the floor.

The front passenger sensing system may detect small or medium objects placed on the seat cushion. For most objects that are in the front passenger seat, the passenger airbag will be disabled. Even though the passenger airbag is disabled, the "pass airbag off" lamp may or may not be illuminated according to the table below.

| Objects | Pass Airbag Off Indicator Lamp | Passenger Airbag |
|---|---|---|
| Small (i.e. three-ring binder, small purse, bottled water) | Unlit | Disabled |
| Medium (i.e. heavy briefcase, fully packed luggage) | Lit | Disabled |
| Empty seat, or small to medium object with safety belt buckled | Lit | Disabled |

If you think that the status of the passenger airbag off indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console (if equipped)
- Objects hanging off the seat back
- Objects stowed in the seatback map pocket (if equipped)
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap
- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat

The conditions listed above may cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat may appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions described in the list above.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of possible serious injury:
Do not stow objects in seat back map pocket (if equipped) or hang objects off seat back if a child is in the front passenger seat.
Do not place objects underneath the front passenger seat or between the seat and the center console (if equipped).
Check the "passenger airbag off" or "pass airbag off" indicator lamp for proper airbag status.
Failure to follow these instructions may interfere with the front passenger seat sensing system.

In case there is a problem with the front passenger sensing system, the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster will stay lit.

**If the airbag readiness light is lit, do the following:**

The driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects that may be lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.

If objects are lodged and/or cargo is interfering with the seat; please take the following steps to remove the obstruction:

- Pull the vehicle over.
- Turn the vehicle off.
- Driver and/or adult passengers should check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction(s) (if found).
- Restart the vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light is no longer illuminated
- If the airbag readiness light remains illuminated, this may or may/not be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

DO NOT attempt to repair or service the system; take your vehicle immediately to an authorized dealer.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at the phone number shown in the *Customer Assistance* section of this *Owner's Guide*.

**WARNING:** Any alteration/modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system.

### Determining if the system is operational

The supplemental restraint system uses a warning indicator light in the instrument cluster or a back-up tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Warning lights and chimes* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light for front and side airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.

- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### Seat-mounted side airbag system

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover on the side of the seatbacks of the front seats or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

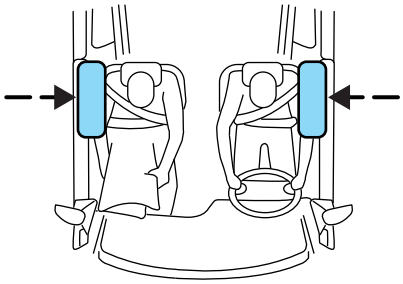
**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the airbag SRS, its fuses or the seat cover on a seat containing an airbag. See your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag SRS is provided.

### *How does the side airbag system work?*

The design and development of the side airbag system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including side air curtain systems).

The side airbag system consists of the following:



- An inflatable nylon bag (airbag) with a gas generator concealed behind the outboard bolster of the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two crash sensors located under the outboard side of the front seats, attached near the floor.

Side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

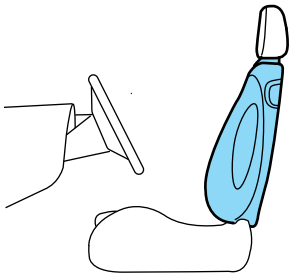
The side airbags are fitted on the outboard side of the seatbacks of the front seats. In certain lateral collisions, the airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated. If the front passenger sensing system detects an empty seat or an unbuckled child or small person, the front passenger seat-mounted side airbag will be deactivated. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

The airbag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates airbag inflation.

The fact that the airbags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Side airbags are designed to inflate in side-impact collisions, not roll-over, rear-impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.

**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

**WARNING:** If the side airbag has deployed, **the airbag will not function again. The side airbag system (including the seat) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



### *Determining if the system is operational*

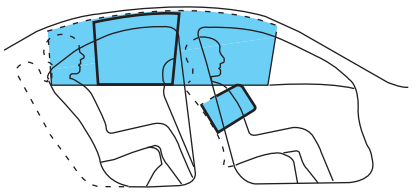
The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

Any difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as used for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned to the on position.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### Side curtain airbag system



**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying side air curtain. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the side air curtain cover.

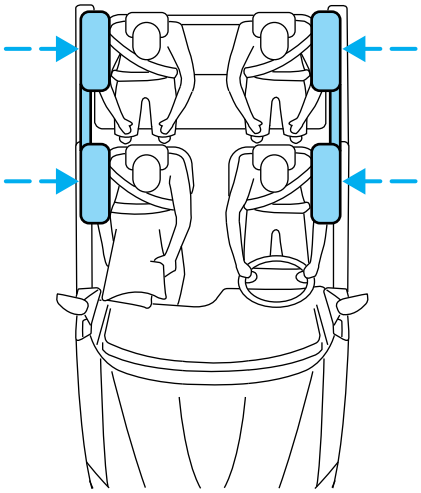
**WARNING:** Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the seat.

**WARNING:** Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the side air curtain system, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing a side air curtain. See your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always wear their safety belts even when an inflatable curtain is provided.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment zone of the inflatable curtain.

### *How does the side air curtain system work?*



The design and development of the side air curtain system included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side airbags (including side air curtain systems).

The side air curtain system consists of the following:

- An inflatable nylon curtain with a gas generator concealed behind the headliner and above the doors.
- The headliner will flex to open above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment.
- The same warning light, electronic control and diagnostic unit as used for the front airbags.
- Two crash sensors located under the outboard side of the front seats, attached near the floor.
- Two crash sensors located at the base of the “C” pillars above the wheel house.

Side air curtains and side airbags, in combination with safety belts, can help reduce the risk of severe injuries in the event of a significant side impact collision.

Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seats. The side air curtain will not interfere with children restrained using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window openings.

The side air curtains are mounted to the sheet metal above the first and second row seats. In certain lateral collisions, the air curtain and seat-mounted side airbag on the side affected by the collision will be inflated, except that the passenger sensing system will deactivate the passenger seat-mounted side airbag if it detects an empty unbuckled

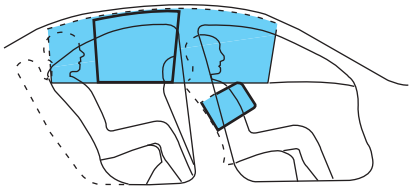
passenger seat or an unbuckled child or small person in the passenger seat. The air curtain was designed to inflate between the side window area and occupant to further enhance the head protection provided to occupants in side impact collisions. The seat-mounted side airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided occupants in side impact collisions.

The side air curtain system SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains lateral deceleration sufficient to cause the sensors to close an electrical circuit that initiates air curtain and seat-mounted side airbag inflation.

The fact that the side air curtain and seat-mounted side airbag did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. The side air curtain system is designed to inflate in side impact collisions, not roll-over, rear impact, frontal or near-frontal collisions, unless the collision causes sufficient lateral deceleration.

**WARNING:** Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

**WARNING:** If the side air curtain has deployed, **the air curtain will not function again. The side air curtain system (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be inspected and serviced by an authorized dealer.** If the air curtain is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.



### *Determining if the system is operational*

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to the *Airbag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

Any difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light (same light as used for front airbag system) will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned to the on position.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

### Disposal of airbags and airbag equipped vehicles (including pretensioners)

See your authorized dealer. Airbags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

## SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using airbags.

### Important child restraint precautions

**WARNING:** Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be purchased separately from the vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

**WARNING:** All children are shaped differently. The Recommendations for Safety Restraints are based on probable child height, age and weight thresholds from NHTSA and other safety organizations or are the minimum requirements of law. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your child seat is appropriate for your child, and is compatible with and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at 1-888-327-4236 or on the internet at http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov. Failure to properly restrain children in safety seats made especially for their height, age, and weight may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

| Recommendations for Safety Restraints for Children | | |
|---|---|---|
| | **Child size, height, weight, or age** | **Recommended restraint type** |
| Infants or toddlers | Children weighing 40 lb (18 kg) or less (generally age four or younger) | Use a child safety seat (sometimes called an infant carrier, convertible seat, or toddler seat). |
| Small children | Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a child safety seat (generally children who are less than 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, are greater than age four (4) and less than age twelve (12), and between 40 lbs (18 kg) and 80 lbs (36 kg) and upward to 100 lbs (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer) | Use a belt-positioning booster seat. |
| Larger children | Children who have outgrown or no longer properly fit in a belt-positioning booster seat (generally children who are at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall or greater than 80 lb (36 kg) or 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by child restraint manufacturer) | Use a vehicle safety belt having the lap belt snug and low across the hips, shoulder belt centered across the shoulder and chest, and seatback upright. |

- You are required by law to properly use safety seats for infants and toddlers in the U.S. and Canada.
- Many states and provinces require that small children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 ft 9 in (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg). Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle.
- When possible, always properly restrain children twelve (12) years of age and under in a rear seating position of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in a front seating position.

***Recommendations for attaching child safety restraints for children***

| Restraint Type | Child Weight | Use any attachment method as indicated below by "X" | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)** | **LATCH (lower anchors only)** | **Safety belt and top tether anchor** | **Safety belt and LATCH (lower anchors and top tether anchor)** | **Safety belt only** |
| Rear facing child seat | Up to 48 lb (21 kg) | | **X** | | | **X** |
| Forward facing child seat | Up to 48 lb (21 kg) | **X** | | **X** | **X** | |
| Forward facing child seat | Over 48 lb (21 kg) | | | **X** | **X** | |

**WARNING:** Air bags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active air bag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back. When possible, all children age 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

**WARNING:** Always carefully follow the instructions and warnings provided by the manufacturer of any child restraint to determine if the restraint device is appropriate for your child's size, height, weight, or age. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions and warnings provided for installation and use in conjunction with the instructions and warnings provided by the vehicle manufacturer. A safety seat that is improperly installed or utilized, is inappropriate for your child's height, age, or weight or does not properly fit the child may increase the risk of serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision, which may result in serious injury or death.

**WARNING:** Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

**WARNING:** Always restrain an unoccupied child seat or booster seat. These objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious injury.

**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

**WARNING:** Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

### Transporting children

Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their age, height and weight. All children are shaped differently. The child height, age and weight thresholds provided are recommendations or the minimum requirements of law. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) provides education and training to ensure that all children ages 0 to 16 are properly restrained in the correct restraint system. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) and your pediatrician to make sure your seat is appropriate for your child and properly installed in the vehicle. To locate a child seat fitting station and CPST contact the NHTSA toll free at **1-888-327-4236** or on the internet at http://www.nhtsa.dot.gov.

Follow all the safety restraint and airbag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the child is the proper height, age, and weight (as specified by your child safety seat or booster manufacturer), fits the restraint and can be

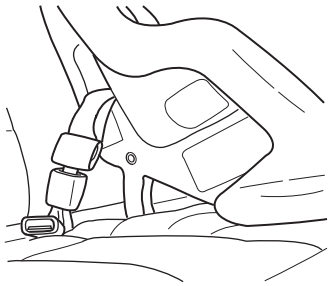
restrained properly, then restrain the child in the child safety seat or with the belt-positioning booster. Remember that child seats and belt-positioning boosters vary and may be designed to fit children of different heights, ages and weights. Children who are too large for child safety seats or belt-positioning boosters (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always properly wear safety belts.

## SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

### Infant and/or toddler seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child.

When installing a child safety seat:



- Review and follow the information presented in the *Airbag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* section in this chapter.
- Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.

Airbags can kill or injure a child in a child seat. NEVER place a rear-facing child seat in front of an active airbag. If you must use a forward-facing child seat in the front seat, move the vehicle seat all the way back.

Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

### Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use. Children 12 and under should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. If all children cannot be seated and restrained properly in a rear seating position, properly restrain the largest child in the front seat.

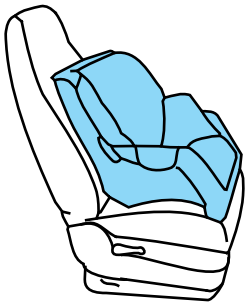
When installing a child safety seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position.
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to help prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place vehicle seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to step 5 below.

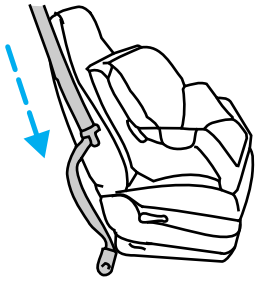
Perform the following steps when installing the child seat with combination lap/shoulder belts:

**Note:** Although the child seat illustrated is a forward facing child seat, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child seat.

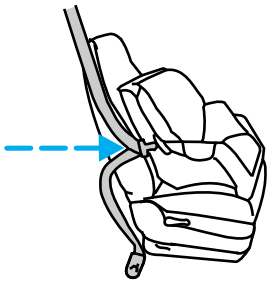
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



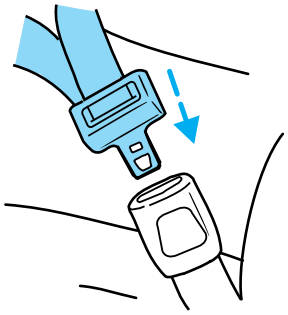
2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.



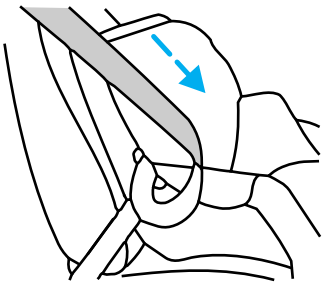
3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear a snap and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.

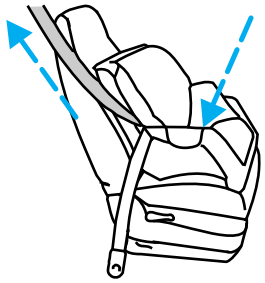


5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is pulled out.

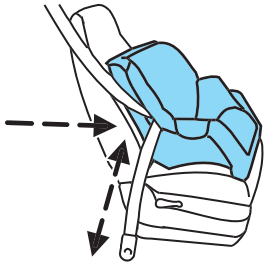


6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

7. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, repeat Steps 5 and 6.



8. Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, e.g., by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that will exist once the additional weight of the child is added to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child seat to the vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean towards the buckle will additionally help to remove remaining slack from the belt.



9. Attach the tether strap (if the child seat is equipped). Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

10. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than one inch (2.5 cm) of movement for proper installation.

11. Ford recommends checking with a NHTSA Certified Child Passenger Safety Technician (CPST) to make certain the child restraint is properly installed.

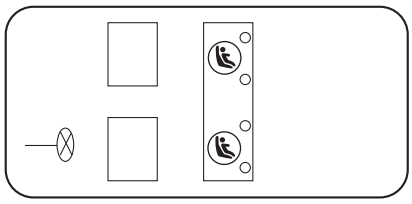
### Attaching child safety seats with LATCH (Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren) attachments

The LATCH system is composed of three vehicle anchor points: two (2) lower anchors located where the vehicle seat back and seat cushion meet (called the “seat bight”) and one (1) top tether anchor located behind that seating position.

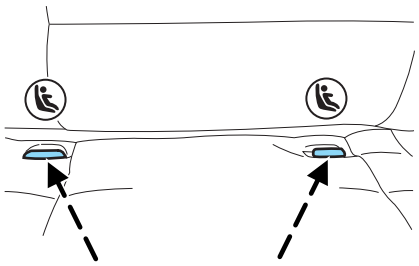
LATCH compatible child safety seats have two rigid or webbing mounted attachments that connect to the two lower anchors at the LATCH equipped seating positions in your vehicle. This type of attachment method eliminates the need to use safety belts to attach the child seat, however the safety belt can still be used to attach the child seat. For

forward-facing child seats, the top tether strap must also be attached to the proper top tether anchor, if a top tether strap has been provided with your child seat. Ford Motor Company recommends the use of a child safety seat having a top tether strap. See *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* and *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter for more information.

Your vehicle has LATCH lower anchors for child seat installation at the seating positions marked with the child seat symbol.



The LATCH anchors are located at the rear section of the rear seat between the cushion and seat back, below the locator symbols on the seat back. Follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions to properly install a child seat with LATCH attachments.



Follow the instructions on attaching child safety seats with tether straps. Refer to *Attaching child safety seats with tether straps* later in this chapter.

Attach LATCH lower attachments of the child seat only to the anchors shown.

**WARNING:** Never attach two child safety seats to the same anchor. In a crash, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child safety seat attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

### *Use of inboard lower anchors from the outboard seating positions (center seating use)*

The lower anchors at the center of the second row rear seat are spaced 460 mm (18 inches) apart. The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 280 mm (11 inches) center to center. A child seat with rigid LATCH attachments cannot be installed at the center seating position. LATCH compatible child seats (with attachments on belt webbing) can only be used at this seating position provided that the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit use with the anchor spacing stated. Do not attach a child seat to any lower anchor if an adjacent child seat is attached to that anchor.

**WARNING:** The standardized spacing for LATCH lower anchors is 280 mm (11 inches) center to center. Do not use LATCH lower anchors for the center seating position unless the child seat manufacturer's instructions permit and specify using anchors spaced at least as far apart as those in this vehicle.

If you install a child seat with rigid LATCH attachments, and have attached the top tether strap to the proper top tether anchor, do not tighten the tether strap enough to lift the child seat off the vehicle seat cushion when the child is seated in it. Keep the tether strap just snug without lifting the front of the child seat. Keeping the child seat just touching the vehicle seat gives the best protection in a severe crash.

Each time you use the safety seat, check that the seat is properly attached to the lower anchors and tether anchor, if applicable. Tug the child seat from side to side and forward and back where it is secured to the vehicle. The seat should move less than one inch when you do this for a proper installation.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a crash greatly increases.

### *Combining safety belt and LATCH lower anchors for attaching child safety seats*

When used in combination, either the safety belt or the LATCH lower anchors may be attached first, provided a proper installation is achieved. Attach the tether strap afterward, if included with the child seat. Refer to *Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children* in this chapter.

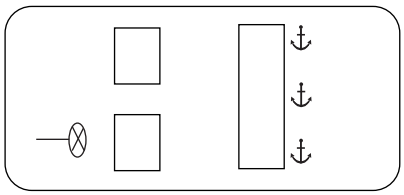
### Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

Many forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which extends from the back of the child safety seat and hooks to an anchoring point called the top tether anchor. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap, or to obtain a longer tether strap if the tether strap on your safety seat does not reach the appropriate top tether anchor in the vehicle.

The rear seats of your vehicle are equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

The tether anchors in your vehicle are located under a cover marked with the tether anchor symbol (shown with title).

The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):



Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

Once the child safety seat has been installed, using either the safety belt, the lower anchors of the LATCH system, or both, you can attach the top tether strap.

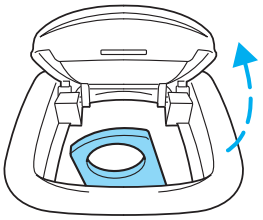
Perform the following steps to attach a child safety seat to the tether anchor:

1. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.

For vehicles with adjustable head restraints, route the tether strap under the head restraint and between the head restraint posts, otherwise route the tether strap over the top of the seatback.

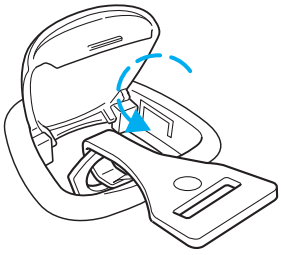
2. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

3. Open the tether anchor cover.



4. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.



5. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

### Child booster seats

The belt-positioning booster (booster seat) is used to improve the fit of the vehicle safety belt. Children outgrow a typical child seat (e.g, convertible or toddler seat) when they weigh about 40 lb (18 kg) and are around four (4) years of age. Consult your child safety seat owner guide for the weight, height, and age limits specific to your child safety seat. Keep your child in the child safety seat if it properly fits the child, remains appropriate for their weight, height and age AND if properly secured to the vehicle.

Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, children who have outgrown a typical child seat are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, and wearing an improperly fitted vehicle safety belt could increase the risk of serious injury in a crash. To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

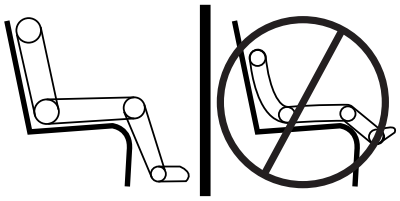
Booster seats position a child so that vehicle lap/shoulder safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably at the edge of the cushion, while minimizing slouching. Booster seats may also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably. Try to keep the belt near the middle of the shoulder and across the center of the chest. Moving the child closer (a few centimeters or inches) to the center of the vehicle, but remaining in the same seating position, may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

### *When children should use booster seats*

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they reach a height of at least 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall (around age eight to age twelve and between 40 lb (18 kg) and 80 lb (36 kg) or upward to 100 lb (45 kg) if recommended by your child restraint manufacturer). Many state and provincial laws require that children use approved booster seats until they reach age eight, a height of 4 feet 9 inches (1.45 meters) tall, or 80 lb (36 kg).

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions when seated without a booster seat:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat cushion?
- Can the child sit without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

### *Types of booster seats*

There are generally two types of belt-positioning booster seats: backless and high back. Always use booster seats in conjunction with the vehicle lap/shoulder belt.

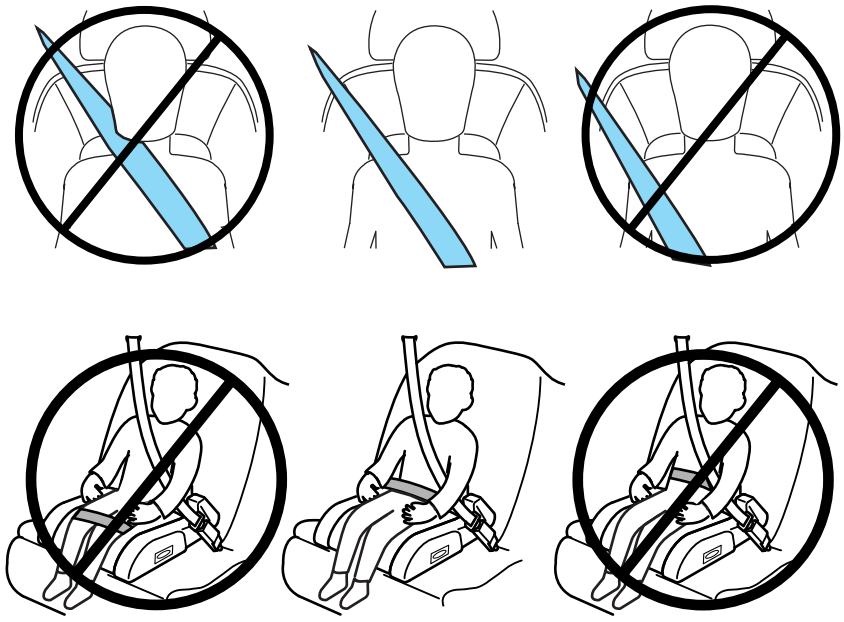
- Backless booster seats

If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield. If a vehicle seating position has a low seat back or no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (as measured at the tops of the ears) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back or head restraint and lap/shoulder belts, or consider using a high back booster seat.

- High back booster seats

If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

Children and booster seats vary in size and shape. Choose a booster that keeps the lap belt low and snug across the hips, never up across the stomach, and lets you adjust the shoulder belt to cross the chest and rest snugly near the center of the shoulder. The drawings below compare the ideal fit (center) to a shoulder belt uncomfortably close to the neck and a shoulder belt that could slip off the shoulder. The drawings below also show how the lap belt should be low and snug across the child's hips.



If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition. Do not introduce any item thicker than this under the booster seat. Check with the booster seat manufacturer's instructions.

### *The importance of shoulder belts*

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is generally best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat.

Move a child to a different seating location if the shoulder belt does not stay positioned on the shoulder during use.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.

**WARNING:** Never place, or allow a child to place, the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it reduces the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

### Child restraint and safety belt maintenance

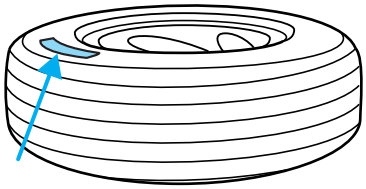
Inspect the vehicle safety belts and child safety seat systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the vehicle and child seat safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All vehicle safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front safety belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Refer to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions for additional inspection and maintenance information specific to the child restraint. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and an authorized dealer finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

**WARNING:** Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly or child restraint system under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

## INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:



- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic passenger car tires. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, light truck or "LT" type tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

**U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades:** The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford Motor Company to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

### Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**WARNING:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

### Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 139. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

**WARNING:** The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

### Glossary of tire terminology

- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture. Also referred to as DOT code.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires].

Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.

- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

### INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial-type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick-type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

**WARNING:** Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or ″blowout″, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

**Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure** is the tire manufacturer's maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10°F (6°C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label.

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never "bleed" or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

**Note:** If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure.

**Note:** If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

**Note:** Some spare tires operate at a higher inflation pressure than the other tires. For T-type/mini-spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at 60 psi (4.15 bar). For Full Size and Dissimilar spare tires (see the *Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information* section for description): Store and maintain at the higher of the front and rear inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

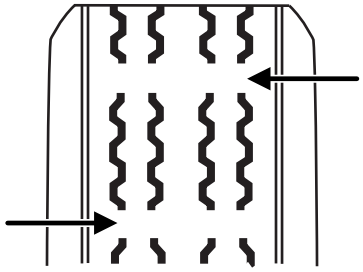
## TIRE CARE

### Inspecting your tires

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check for holes or cuts that may permit air leakage from the tire and make necessary repairs. Also inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can cause tires to wear abnormally. Inspect all your tires, including the spare, frequently, and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

### Tire wear



When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

### Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

**WARNING: Age**
Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure, etc.) the tires experience throughout their lives. In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.
You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

### U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

### Tire replacement requirements

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

**WARNING:** Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. The recommended tire and wheel size may be found on either the Safety Compliance Certification Label or the Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or edge of the driver’s door. If this information is not found on these labels then you should consult your Ford dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, see an authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** When mounting replacement tires and wheels, you should not exceed the maximum pressure indicated on the sidewall of the tire to set the beads without additional precautions listed below. If the beads do not seat at the maximum pressure indicated, re-lubricate and try again.
When inflating the tire for mounting pressures up to 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure on the tire sidewall, the following precautions must be taken to protect the person mounting the tire:

1. Make sure that you have the correct tire and wheel size.

2. Lubricate the tire bead and wheel bead seat area again.

3. Stand at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

4. Use both eye and ear protection.
For a mounting pressure more than 20 psi (1.38 bar) greater than the maximum pressure, a Ford Dealer or other tire service professional should do the mounting.
Always inflate steel carcass tires with a remote air fill with the person inflating standing at a minimum of 12 ft. (3.66 m) away from the tire wheel assembly.

**Important:** Remember to replace the wheel valve stems when the road tires are replaced on your vehicle.

It is recommended that the two front tires or two rear tires generally be replaced as a pair.

The tire pressure sensors mounted in the wheels (originally installed on your vehicle) are not designed to be used in aftermarket wheels.

The use of wheels or tires not recommended by Ford Motor Company may affect the operation of your Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

If the TPMS indicator is flashing, your TPMS is malfunctioning. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

### Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road

- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

**WARNING:** If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### *Highway hazards*

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

### Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

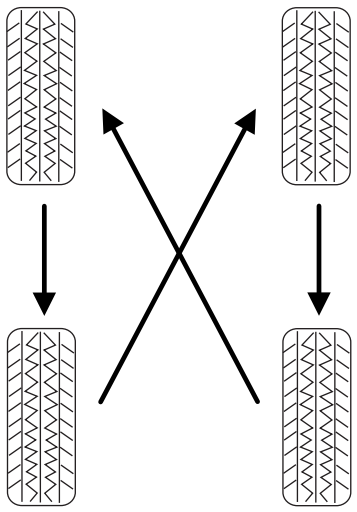
Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

### Tire rotation

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the *scheduled maintenance information* that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

- Front Wheel Drive (FWD)/All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

**Note:** If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

**Note:** Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

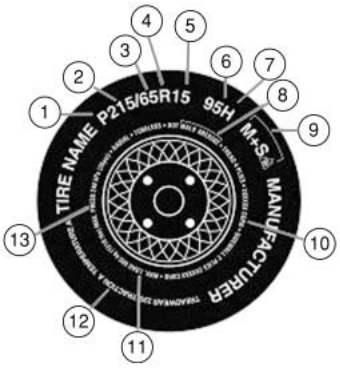
**Note:** After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

### INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Both U.S. and Canada Federal regulations require tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

### Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)




1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

**Note:** If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your *Owner’s Guide*. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire’s speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

**Note:** You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

| Letter rating | Speed rating - mph (km/h) |
|---|---|
| M | 81 mph (130 km/h) |
| N | 87 mph (140 km/h) |
| Q | 99 mph (159 km/h) |
| R | 106 mph (171 km/h) |
| S | 112 mph (180 km/h) |
| T | 118 mph (190 km/h) |
| U | 124 mph (200 km/h) |
| H | 130 mph (210 km/h) |
| V | 149 mph (240 km/h) |
| W | 168 mph (270 km/h) |
| Y | 186 mph (299 km/h) |
| **Note:** For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR. | |

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or
**AT:** All Terrain, or
**AS:** All Season.

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the Safety Compliance Certification Label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

12. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades**

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label or Tire Label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

### Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for “LT” type tires

“LT” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below.

**Note:** Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

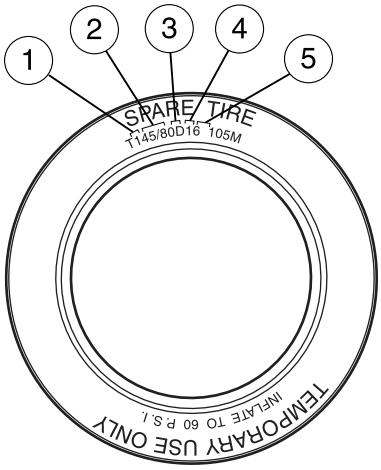
2. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire’s load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

### Information on “T” type tires

“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:




T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

**Note:** The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example. Tire Quality Grades do not apply to this type of tire.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.
**R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

### Location of the tire label

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.

### TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (TPMS)

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

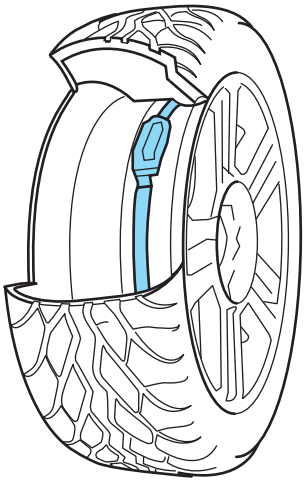
Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**WARNING:** The Tire Pressure Monitoring System is NOT a substitute for manually checking tire pressure. The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using a tire gauge, see *Inflating your tires* in this chapter. Failure to properly maintain your tire pressure could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

**Changing tires with TPMS**



**Each road tire is equipped with a tire pressure sensor fastened to the inside rim of the wheel. The pressure sensor is covered by the tire and is not visible unless the tire is removed. The pressure sensor is located opposite (180 degrees) from the valve stem. Care must be taken when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.** It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

The tire pressure should be checked periodically (at least monthly) using an accurate tire gauge, refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.

### Understanding your Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System measures pressure in your four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle. The Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp will turn ON if the tire pressure is significantly low. Once the light is illuminated, your tires are under inflated and need to be inflated to the manufacturer's recommended tire pressure. Even if the light turns ON and a short time later turns OFF, your tire pressure still needs to be checked. Visit www.checkmytires.org for additional information.

#### *When your temporary spare tire is installed*

When one of your road tires needs to be replaced with the temporary spare, the TPMS system will continue to identify an issue to remind you that the damaged road wheel/tire needs to be repaired and put back on your vehicle.

To restore the full functionality of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System, have the damaged road wheel/tire repaired and remounted on your vehicle. For additional information, refer to *Changing tires with TPMS* in this section.

### *When you believe your system is not operating properly*

The main function of the Tire Pressure Monitoring System is to warn you when your tires need air. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended. Please refer to the following chart for information concerning your Tire Pressure Monitoring System:

| Low Tire Pressure Warning Light | Possible cause | Customer Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| Solid Warning Light | Tire(s) under-inflated | 1. Check your tire pressure to ensure tires are properly inflated; refer to *Inflating your tires* in this chapter.<br>2. After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended inflation pressure as shown on the Tire Label (located on the edge of driver's door or the B-Pillar), the vehicle must be driven for at least two minutes over 20 mph (32 km/h) before the light will turn OFF. |
| | Spare tire in use | Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel/tire and reinstall it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description on how the system functions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section. |
| | TPMS malfunction | If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the light remains ON, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. |

| Low Tire Pressure Warning Light | Possible cause | Customer Action Required |
|---|---|---|
| Flashing Warning Light | Spare tire in use | Your temporary spare tire is in use. Repair the damaged road wheel and re-mount it on the vehicle to restore system functionality. For a description of how the system functions under these conditions, refer to *When your temporary spare tire is installed* in this section. |
| | TPMS malfunction | If your tires are properly inflated and your spare tire is not in use and the TPMS warning light still flashes, have the system inspected by your authorized dealer. |

### *When inflating your tires*

When putting air into your tires (such as at a gas station or in your garage), the Tire Pressure Monitoring System may not respond immediately to the air added to your tires.

It may take up to two minutes of driving over 20 mph (32 km/h) for the light to turn OFF after you have filled your tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

### *How temperature affects your tire pressure*

The Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors tire pressure in each pneumatic tire. While driving in a normal manner, a typical passenger tire inflation pressure may increase approximately 2 to 4 psi (14 to 28 kPa) from a cold start situation. If the vehicle is stationary over night with the outside temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, the tire pressure may decrease approximately 3 psi (20.7 kPa) for a drop of 30° F (16.6°C) in ambient temperature. This lower pressure value may be detected by the TPMS as being significantly lower than the recommended inflation pressure and activate the TPMS warning for low tire pressure. If the low tire pressure warning light is ON, visually check each tire to verify that no tire is flat. (If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.) Check air pressure in the road tires. If any tire is under-inflated, carefully drive the vehicle to the nearest location where air can be added to the tires. Inflate all the tires to the recommended inflation pressure.

## SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS

**WARNING:** Snow tires must be the same size, load index, speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure.

The tires on your vehicle have all weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Use only SAE class ″S″ cables or equivalent on the front axle for P205/60R16 equipped vehicles. SAE class “S” chains or other conventional link chains may cause damage to the vehicles wheel house and/or body.
- Do not install tire chains, cables, or optional traction devices on the rear tires. This could cause damage to the vehicle’s wheel house or body.
- Do not use tire chains, cables, or optional traction devices with optional P225/50R17 tires.
- Install cable chains securely, verifying that the cables do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the cables rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and re-tighten the cables. If this does not work, remove the cables to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Remove the tire cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire cables on dry roads.
- The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.
- Do not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h) with tire cables on your vehicle.

## VEHICLE LOADING

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings from the vehicle's Tire Label or Safety Compliance Certification Label:

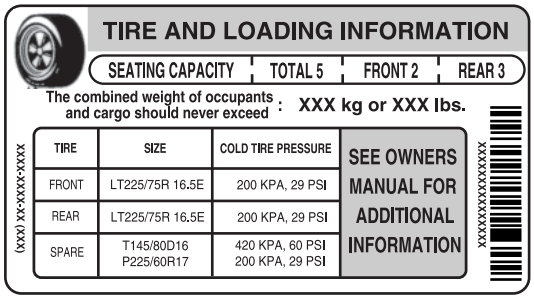
**Base Curb Weight** – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

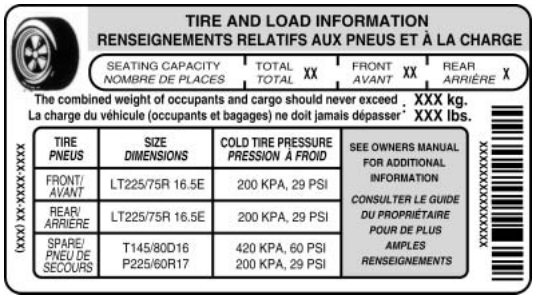
**Vehicle Curb Weight** – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your authorized dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

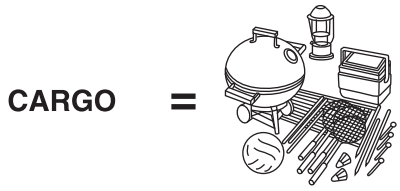
**Payload** – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door (vehicles exported outside the US and Canada may not have a Tire Label). Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the Tire Label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or authorized-dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the Tire Label in order to determine the new payload.

**WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

**Example only:**



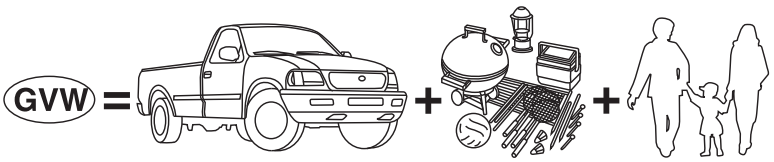




**Cargo Weight** – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment.

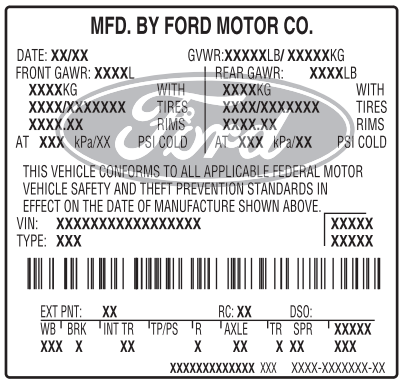
**GAW (Gross Axle Weight)** – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

**GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**




**GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight)** – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

**GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating)** – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**




**WARNING:** Exceeding the Safety Compliance Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

**WARNING:** Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.

**WARNING:** Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the original tires because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the original tires do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

**WARNING:** Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

**Steps for determining the correct load limit:**

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.). In metric units (635-340 (5 x 68) = 295 kg.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- Another example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, 4 of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: 1400 – (5 x 220) - (5 x 30) = 1400 - 1100 - 150 = 150 lb. Yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (5 x 99 kg) - (5 x 13.5 kg) = 635 - 495 - 67.5 = 72.5 kg.

- A final example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be: 1400 - (2 x 220) - (12 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 1200 = - 240 lb. No, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (12 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 540 = -103 kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (104 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

  1400 - (2 x 220) - (9 x 100) = 1400 - 440 - 900 = 60 lb. Now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg - (2 x 99 kg) - (9 x 45 kg) = 635 - 198 - 405 = 32 kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Safety Compliance Certification Label found on the edge of the driver's door.

### TRAILER TOWING

**WARNING:** Never tow a trailer with this vehicle. Your vehicle is not equipped to tow. No towing packages are available through an authorized dealer.

### RECREATIONAL TOWING

Follow these guidelines if you have a need for recreational (RV) towing. An example of recreational towing would be towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. These guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

**Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles with automatic transmissions:**

Do not tow the vehicle with the front drive wheels on the ground. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with the front drive wheels on a dolly or with all four (4) wheels off the ground on a car-hauling trailer.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

**Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles with manual transmissions:** If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, shifting the transmission into neutral (N) permits “flat-towing” (all wheels on the ground) for pulling behind a motorhome.

Before you tow your vehicle:

- Release the parking brake.
- Move the gearshift to the neutral position.
- Turn the key in the ignition to the off position.
- The maximum recommended speed is 70 mph (113 km/h).
- The maximum recommended distance is unlimited.
- The vehicle must be towed in the forward position to ensure no damage is done to the internal transmission components.

In addition, it is recommended that you follow the instructions provided by the aftermarket manufacturer of the towing equipment, if provided.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

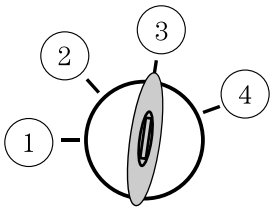
**All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles:**

Do not tow your vehicle with any wheels on the ground, as vehicle or transmission damage may occur. It is recommended to tow your vehicle with all four (4) wheels off the ground such as when using a car-hauling trailer. Otherwise, no recreational towing is permitted.

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle, see *Wrecker towing* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

## STARTING

### Positions of the ignition




1. Off— locks the gearshift lever and allows key removal. This position also shuts the engine and all electrical accessories off.

2. Accessory— allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

3. On— all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.

4. Start— cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

### Starting your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system.

This system meets all Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.

To avoid potential transmission damage at extremely cold temperatures (below -20°F [-30°C]), it is recommended that the vehicle be warmed up to normal operating temperature before driving at highway speeds above 50 mph (80 km/h). Normal operating temperature is normally reached after 10 minutes of moderate driving or idling.

**WARNING:** Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

**WARNING:** Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### *Important safety precautions*

When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked.

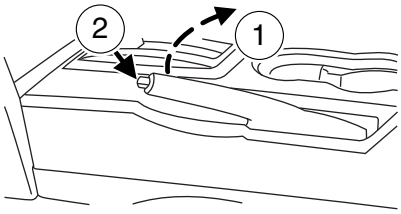
Before starting the vehicle:

1. Make sure all vehicle occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

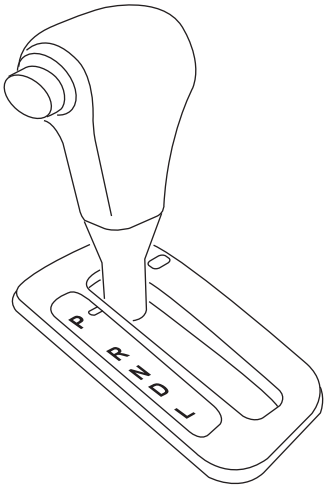
2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

If starting a vehicle with an automatic transmission:

- Make sure the parking brake is set.

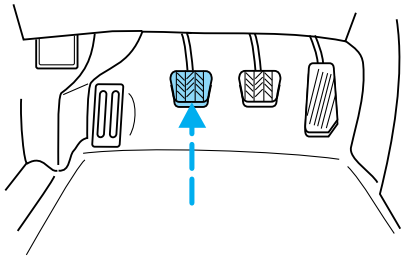


- Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).

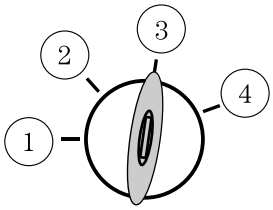



If starting a vehicle with a manual transmission:

- Make sure the parking brake is set.
- Push the clutch pedal to the floor.

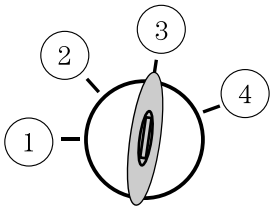


3. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).




Some warning lights will briefly illuminate. See *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for more information regarding the warning lights.

### Starting the engine




1. Turn the key to 3 (on) without turning the key to 4 (start).
2. Turn the key to 4 (start), then release the key as soon as the engine begins cranking. Your vehicle has a computer assisted cranking system that assists in starting the engine. After releasing the key from the 4 (start) position, the engine may continue cranking for up to 10 seconds or until the vehicle starts.

   **Note:** Cranking may be stopped at any time by turning the key to the off position.

3. After idling for a few seconds, apply the brake, shift into gear and drive.

**Note:** If the engine does not start on the first try, turn the key to the off position, wait 10 seconds and try step 2 again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try step 2 again, keeping the accelerator on the floor until the engine begins to accelerate above cranking speeds; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

### Guarding against exhaust fumes

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

**WARNING:** If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

### Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least one inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

## ENGINE BLOCK HEATER (IF EQUIPPED)

An engine block heater warms the engine coolant which aids in starting and allows the heater/defroster system to respond quickly. If your vehicle is equipped with this system, your equipment includes a heater element which is installed in your engine block and a wire harness which allows the user to connect the system to a grounded 120 volt a/c electrical source. The block heater system is most effective when outdoor temperatures reach below 0°F (-18°C).

**WARNING:** Failure to follow engine block heater instructions could result in property damage or physical injury.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

Prior to using the engine block heater, follow these recommendations for proper and safe operation:

- For your safety, use an outdoor extension cord that is product certified by Underwriter's Laboratory (UL) or Canadian Standards Association (CSA). Use only an extension cord that can be used outdoors, in cold temperatures, and is clearly marked ″Suitable for Use with Outdoor Appliances.″ Never use an indoor extension cord outdoors; it could result in an electric shock or fire hazard.
- Use a 16 gauge outdoor extension cord, minimum.
- Use as short an extension cord as possible.
- Do not use multiple extension cords. Instead, use one extension cord which is long enough to reach from the engine block heater cord to the outlet without stretching.
- Make certain that the extension cord is in excellent condition (not patched or spliced). Store your extension cord indoors at temperatures above 32°F (0°C). Outdoor conditions can deteriorate extension cords over a period of time.
- To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two pronged (cheater) adapters. Also ensure that the block heater, especially the cord, is in good condition before use.
- Make sure that when in operation, the extension cord plug /engine block heater cord plug connection is free and clear of water in order to prevent possible shock or fire.
- Be sure that areas where the vehicle is parked are clean and clear of all combustibles such as petroleum products, dust, rags, paper and similar items.
- Be sure that the engine block heater, heater cord and extension cord are solidly connected. A poor connection can cause the cord to become very hot and may result in an electrical shock or fire. Be sure to check for heat anywhere in the electrical hookup once the system has been operating for approximately a half hour.

- Finally, have the engine block heater system checked during your fall tune-up to be sure it's in good working order.

**How to use the engine block heater**

Ensure the receptacle terminals are clean and dry prior to use. To clean them, use a dry cloth.

Depending on the type of factory installed equipment, your engine block heater system may consume anywhere between 400 watts or 1000 watts of energy per hour. Your factory installed block heater system does not have a thermostat; however, maximum temperature is attained after approximately three hours of operation. Block heater operation longer than three hours will not improve system performance and will unnecessarily use additional electricity.

Make sure system is unplugged and properly stowed before driving the vehicle. While not in use, make sure the protective cover seals the prongs of the engine block heater cord plug.

### BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by an authorized dealer. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by an authorized dealer.

Refer to *Brake system warning light* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

### Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. The ABS operates by detecting the onset of wheel lockup during brake application and compensates for this tendency. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking; any pulsation or mechanical noise you may feel or hear is normal. In addition, the ABS performs a self-check after you start the engine and begin to drive away. A brief mechanical noise may be heard during this test. This is normal.

### *ABS warning lamp*

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.

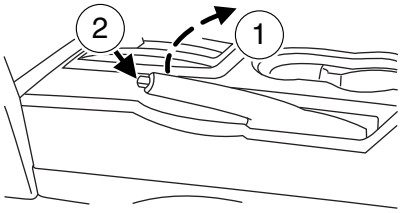
Even when the ABS is disabled and the ABS light is on, normal braking is still effective. If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.

### *Using ABS*

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain full steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance and does not decrease the time necessary to apply the brakes.

### Parking brake

To set the parking brake (1), pull the parking brake handle up as far as possible.



The BRAKE warning lamp will illuminate and will remain illuminated until the parking brake is released.

To release, press and hold the button (2), pull the handle up slightly, then push the handle down.

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or in 1 (First) (manual transmission).

**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### ADVANCETRAC® STABILITY ENHANCEMENT SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

**WARNING:** Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and/or wheel/tire size may change the handling characteristics of the vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the AdvanceTrac® system. In addition, installing any stereo loudspeakers may interfere with and adversely affect the AdvanceTrac® system. Install any aftermarket stereo loudspeaker as far as possible from the front center console, the tunnel, and the front seats in order to minimize the risk of interfering with the Advance Trac sensors. Reducing the effectiveness of the AdvanceTrac® system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

**WARNING:** Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the AdvanceTrac® system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If your AdvanceTrac® system activates, SLOW DOWN.

**WARNING:** If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac® system, the "sliding car" icon will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac® system is not manually disabled (push the AdvanceTrac® "Off " button located on the center of the instrument panel). If the "sliding car" icon still illuminates steadily, have the system service by an authorized dealer immediately.

Your vehicle may be equipped with the AdvanceTrac system. The AdvanceTrac system provides the following stability enhancement features for certain driving situations:

- Traction Control (TCS), which functions to help avoid drive-wheel spin and loss of traction.
- Electronic Stability Control (ESC), which functions to help avoid skids or lateral slides

The AdvanceTrac® system automatically enables each time the engine is started. All features of the AdvanceTrac® system (TCS and ESC) are active and monitor the vehicle from start-up. However, the system will only intervene if the driving situation requires it.

The AdvanceTrac® system includes an AdvanceTrac® "Off" button on the center of the instrument panel, and a "sliding car" icon in the instrument cluster. The "sliding car" icon in the instrument cluster will illuminate temporarily during start-up as part of a normal system self-check, or during driving if a driving situation causes the AdvanceTrac® system to operate. If the "sliding car" icon illuminates steadily, verify that the AdvanceTrac® system is not manually disabled by pressing the AdvanceTrac® "Off" button located on the center stack of the instrument panel. If the "sliding car" icon remains steadily illuminated, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. If equipped with a message center, the vehicle will also indicate a failure with the AdvanceTrac® system.

When AdvanceTrac® performs a normal system self-check, some drivers may notice a slight movement of the brake, and/or a rumble, grunting, or grinding noise after startup and when driving off.

When an event occurs that activates AdvanceTrac® you may experience the following:

- A slight deceleration of the vehicle
- The “sliding car” indicator light will flash.
- A vibration in the pedal when your foot is on the brake pedal
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the systems applies higher brake forces. You may also hear a whoosh of air from under the instrument panel during this severe condition.
- The brake pedal may feel stiffer than usual.

**Traction Control (TCS)**

Traction Control is a driver aid feature that helps your vehicle maintain traction of the wheels, typically when driving on slippery and/or hilly road surfaces, by detecting and controlling wheel spin.

Excessive wheel spin is controlled in two ways, which may work separately or in tandem, Engine Traction Control and Brake Traction Control. Engine Traction Control works to limit drive-wheel spin by momentarily reducing engine power. Brake Traction Control works to limit wheel spin by momentarily applying the brakes to the wheel that is slipping. Traction Control is most active at low speeds.

During Traction Control events the “sliding car” icon in the instrument cluster will flash.

If the Traction Control system is activated excessively in a short period of time, the braking portion of the system may become temporarily disabled to allow the brakes to cool down. In this situation, Traction Control will use only engine power reduction or transfer to help control the wheels from over-spinning. When the brakes have cooled down, the system will regain all features. Anti-lock braking, and ESC are not affected by this condition and will continue to function during the cool-down period.

The Engine Traction Control and Brake Traction Control system may be deactivated in certain situations. See the *Switching Off AdvanceTrac®* section below.

**Electronic Stability Control (ESC)**

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) may enhance your vehicle's directional stability during adverse maneuvers, for example when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. ESC operates by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power if the system detects that the vehicle is about to skid or slide laterally.

During Electronic Stability Control events the "sliding car" icon in the instrument cluster will flash.

Certain adverse driving maneuvers may activate the Electronic Stability Control system, which include but are not limited to:

- Taking a turn too fast
- Maneuvering quickly to avoid an accident, pedestrian or obstacle
- Driving over a patch of ice or other slippery surfaces
- Changing lanes on a snow-rutted road
- Entering a snow-free road from a snow-covered side street, or vice versa
- Entering a paved road from a gravel road, or vice versa
- Cornering while towing a heavily loaded trailer (refer to *Trailer towing* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter).

**Switching Off AdvanceTrac®**

If the vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, and seems to lose engine power, switching off certain features of the AdvanceTrac® system may be beneficial because the wheels are allowed to spin. This will restore full engine power and will enhance momentum through the obstacle. To switch off the AdvanceTrac® system press the AdvanceTrac® ″Off″ button. Full features of the AdvanceTrac® system can be restored by pressing the AdvanceTrac® ″Off″ button again or by turning off and restarting the engine.

If you switch off the AdvanceTrac® system, the ″sliding car″ icon will illuminate steadily. Pressing the AdvanceTrac® ″Off″ button again will turn off the lighted button, ″sliding car″ icon .

In R (Reverse), ABS and the Engine and Brake Traction Control features will continue to function; however, ESC is disabled.

| AdvanceTrac® Features | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Button functions** | **"Sliding car" icon** | **ESC** | **Traction Control** |
| Default at start-up | Illuminated during bulb check | Enabled | Enabled |
| Button pressed momentarily | Illuminated solid | Enabled | Disabled |
| Button pressed again after deactivation | Not illuminated | Enabled | Enabled |

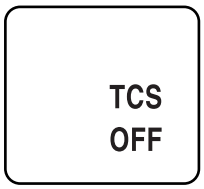
### TRACTION CONTROL™ (IF EQUIPPED)

The Traction Control™ system helps you maintain the stability and steerability of your vehicle, especially on slippery road surfaces such as snow- or ice-covered roads and gravel roads. The system will allow your vehicle to make better use of available traction in these conditions.

During Traction Control™ operation, the traction control active light will illuminate, you may hear an electric motor type of sound coming from the engine compartment, and the engine may not "rev-up" when you push further on the accelerator. This is normal system behavior and should be no reason for concern.

**WARNING:** Aggressive driving in any road conditions can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of severe personal injury or property damage. The occurrence of a Traction Control™ event is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this may lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. If you experience a severe road event, SLOW DOWN.

The Traction Control™ switch is located on the instrument panel. The Traction Control™ system will automatically turn on every time the ignition is turned off and on. The Traction Control™ system should normally be left on.




If you should become stuck in snow or ice or on a very slippery road surface, try switching the Traction Control™ system off by pressing the switch on the instrument panel. Switching the Traction Control™ system off may allow excess wheel spin to "dig" the vehicle out and enable a successful "rocking" maneuver. When the Traction Control™ system is off, an indicator light will illuminate and will remain on until the system is turned back on or the ignition is turned off and on. Remember to switch the Traction Control™ system back on once the vehicle is no longer stuck.

If a system fault is detected, the traction control active light will illuminate, the Traction Control™ button will not turn the system on or off and your vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer.

### STEERING

To help prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than a few seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the MIN mark on the reservoir).
- Some noise is normal during operation. If excessive, check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Heavy or uneven steering efforts may be caused by low power steering pump fluid level. Check for low power steering pump fluid level before seeking service by your authorized dealer.
- Do not fill the power steering pump reservoir above the MAX mark on the reservoir, as this may result in leaks from the reservoir.

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

### Speed sensitive steering

The steering in your vehicle is speed sensitive. At high speeds, steering assist will decrease to improve steering feel. At lower speeds, maneuverability will be increased.

If the amount of effort required to steer your vehicle changes while driving at a constant vehicle speed, have the power steering system checked by your authorized dealer.

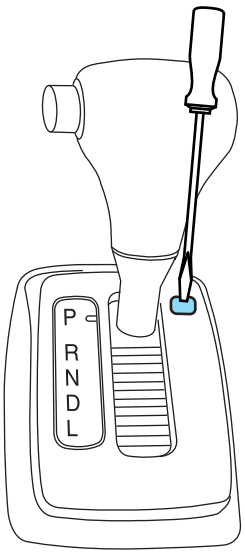
## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION

### Brake-shift interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the on position unless brake pedal is depressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the on position and the brake pedal depressed:

1. Apply the parking brake, turn ignition key to off, then remove the key.
2. Using a screwdriver (or similar tool), remove the protective cover to the interlock release access hole on the console.
3. Insert the screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press downward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the P (Park) position and into the N (Neutral) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the protective cover.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.



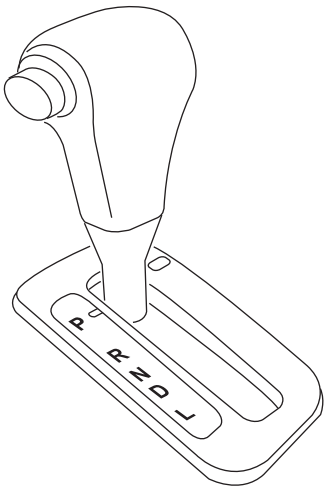

If it is necessary to use the above procedure to move the gearshift lever, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brakelamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

**WARNING:** Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

### Understanding the gearshift positions of the 5–speed automatic transmission (if equipped)




**P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Depress the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

**N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

**D (Drive)**

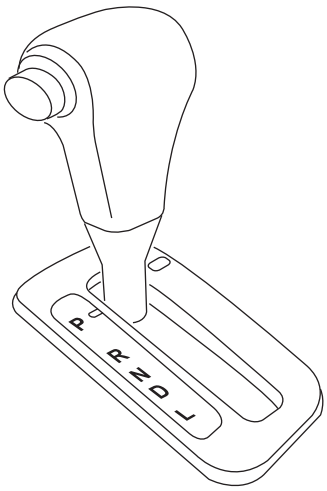
The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through five.

**L (Low)**

This position:

- Provides increased engine braking during downhill/mountain driving.
- Provides extended shift scheduling, allowing both upshifts and downshifts, at a higher overall RPM to provide optimum engine braking.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

### Understanding the gearshift positions of the 6–speed automatic transmission (if equipped)




**P (Park)**

This position locks the transmission and prevents the front wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Depress the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the off position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**R (Reverse)**

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

**N (Neutral)**

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

**D (Drive)**

The normal driving position for the best fuel economy. Transmission operates in gears one through six.

**L (Low)**

This position:

- Provides increased engine braking during downhill/mountain driving.
- Provides extended shift scheduling, allowing both upshifts and downshifts, at a higher overall RPM to provide optimum engine braking.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

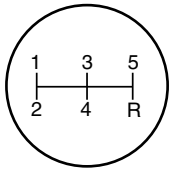
### If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.**

## MANUAL TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)




### Using the clutch

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

To start the vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.

2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.

3. Start the engine.

4. Press the brake pedal and move the gearshift lever to the desired gear; 1 (First) or R (Reverse).

5. Release the parking brake, then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully depressed to the floor. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

**Failure to fully depress the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.**

**Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will severely reduce the life of the clutch and could nullify a clutch warranty claim.**

### Recommended shift speeds

**Do not downshift into 1 (First) when your vehicle is moving faster than 15 mph (24 km/h). This will damage the clutch.**

Upshift according to the following chart:

| Recommended upshifts (for best fuel economy) when accelerating | |
|---|---|
| **5-speed manual transmission** | |
| Shift from: | |
| 1 - 2 | 14 mph (23 km/h) |
| 2 - 3 | 24 mph (39 km/h) |
| 3 - 4 | 32 mph (51 km/h) |
| 4 - 5 | 44 mph (71 km/h) |

### Reverse

**Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into R (Reverse). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.**

Hold the clutch pedal down and move the gearshift lever into the neutral position. Wait at least three seconds before shifting into R (Reverse).

**Note:** The gearshift lever can only be moved into R (Reverse) by moving it from left of 3 (Third) and 4 (Fourth) before shifting into R (Reverse). This is a lockout feature that protects the transmission from accidentally being shifted into R (Reverse) from 5 (Fifth).

If R (Reverse) is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and return the gearshift to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, then press it down and shift to R (Reverse) again.

### Parking your vehicle

1. Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, then shift into 1 (First).
3. Turn the ignition off.

**WARNING:** Do not park your vehicle in Neutral, it may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Use 1 (First) gear and set the parking brake fully.

### Removing the key

Turn the ignition to the off position, and remove the key.

## REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The Reverse Sensing System (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

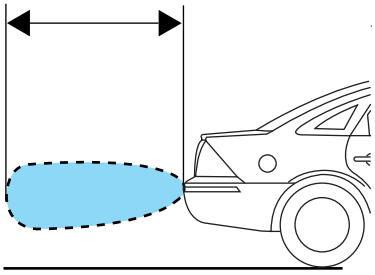
**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

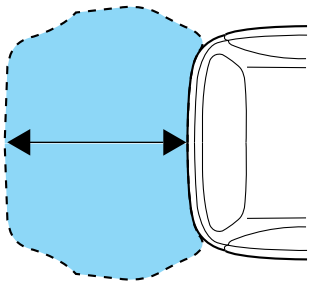
**WARNING:** To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in R (Reverse) and when using the RSS.

**WARNING:** This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

**WARNING:** Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.

The RSS detects obstacles up to six feet (two meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.





While receiving a warning the radio volume will be reduced to a predetermined level. After the warning goes away, the radio will return to the previous value.

The RSS automatically turns on when the gear selector is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is on. A control in the message center allows the driver to disable the system only when the ignition is on and the gear selector is in R (Reverse). Refer to *Message center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter for more information.

**Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.**

**If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.**

## ALL WHEEL DRIVE (AWD) SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a full-time All Wheel Drive (AWD) system. The AWD system is an active system, meaning it not only responds to wheel slip between the front and rear axles but also has the ability to anticipate wheel slip and transfer torque to the rear wheels before slip occurs. The AWD system is active all the time and requires no input from the operator.

All components of the AWD system are sealed for life and require no maintenance.

If your vehicle is equipped with AWD, a spare tire of a different size other than the tire provided should never be used. A dissimilar spare tire size (other than the spare tire provided) or major dissimilar tire sizes between the front and rear axles could cause the AWD system to stop functioning and default to front wheel drive.

**Note:** Your AWD vehicle is not intended for off-road use. The AWD feature gives your vehicle some limited off-road capabilities in which driving surfaces are relatively level, obstruction-free and otherwise similar to normal on-road driving conditions. Operating your vehicle under other than those conditions could subject the vehicle to excessive stress which might result in damage which is not covered under your warranty.

### Driving on slippery surfaces with AWD vehicles

AWD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough roads and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the highway.

When driving at slow speeds off-highway under high outside temperatures, use L (Low) gear when possible. L (Low) gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

#### *Basic operating principles*

- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.
- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

### *If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement*

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or rollover. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

### *If your vehicle gets stuck*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

If your vehicle is equipped with Traction Control™, it may be beneficial to disengage the Traction Control™ system while attempting to rock the vehicle.

**Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.**

**Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.**

**WARNING:** Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

**WARNING:** If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your authorized dealer.

**WARNING:** Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

### *Emergency maneuvers*

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle (i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency). Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.
- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

### *AWD Systems (if equipped)*

AWD uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

### *Sand*

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

**If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission:** When driving at slow speeds in deep sand under high outside temperatures, use L (Low) gear when possible. L (Low) gear operation will maximize the engine and transmission cooling capability.

Under severe operating conditions, the A/C may cycle on and off to protect overheating of the engine.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

### *Mud and water*

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even AWD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the engine, transmission, AWD System components or axles are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

**Driving through deep water may damage the engine or transmission.**

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant and PTU (Power Transfer Unit) lubricant should be checked and changed if necessary.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

"Tread Lightly" is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by "treading lightly."

### *Driving on hilly or sloping terrain*

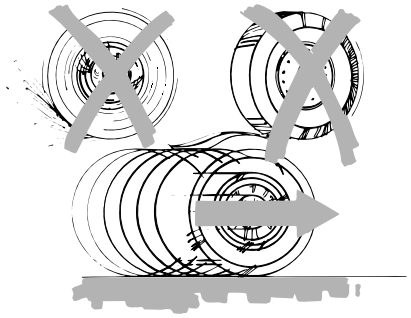
Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills.** A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

If you do stall out, do not try to turnaround because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.

Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle.



Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, therefore apply the brakes steadily. Do not “pump” the brakes.

### *Driving on snow and ice*

**Note:** Excessive tire slippage can cause transmission damage.

AWD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although an AWD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won’t stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, apply the brake steadily. Since

your vehicle is equipped with a four wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS), do not “pump” the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

### *Maintenance and Modifications*

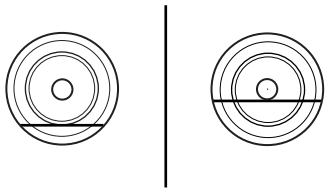
The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will rollover as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder or luggage racks).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-highway usage.

## DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars) or the bottom of the hubs (for trucks).



When driving through water, traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine’s air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

**Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.** Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

## ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

### Getting roadside assistance

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24–hours, seven days a week
- for the coverage period listed on the Roadside Assistance Card included in your Owner Guide portfolio.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except vehicles that have been supplied with a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery – Independent Service Contractors, if not prohibited by state, local or municipal law shall deliver up to 2.0 gallons (7.5L) of gasoline or 5 gallons (18.9L) of diesel fuel to a disabled vehicle. Fuel delivery service is limited to two no-charge occurrences within a 12-month period.
- winch out – available within 100 feet (30.5 meters) of a paved or county maintained road, no recoveries.
- towing – Ford/Mercury/Lincoln eligible vehicle towed to an authorized dealer within 35 miles (56.3 km) of the disablement location or to the nearest authorized dealer. If a member requests to be towed to an authorized dealer more than 35 miles (56.3 km) from the disablement location, the member shall be responsible for any mileage costs in excess of 35 miles (56.3 km).

Trailers shall be covered up to $200 if the disabled eligible vehicle requires service at the nearest authorized dealer. If the trailer is disabled, but the towing vehicle is operational, the trailer does not qualify for any roadside services.

**Canadian customers refer to your Customer Information Guide for information on:**

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts
- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

In Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1–877–294–2582 or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

### Using roadside assistance

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Customer Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers who require Roadside Assistance, call 1-800-241-3673.

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1-800-665-2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount for towing to the nearest dealership within 35 miles. To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford, Mercury and Lincoln vehicle customers call 1-800-241-3673. Customers will be asked to submit their original receipts.

Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1–800–665–2006.

### HAZARD FLASHER CONTROL

The hazard flasher is located on the instrument panel by the radio. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.

Push in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

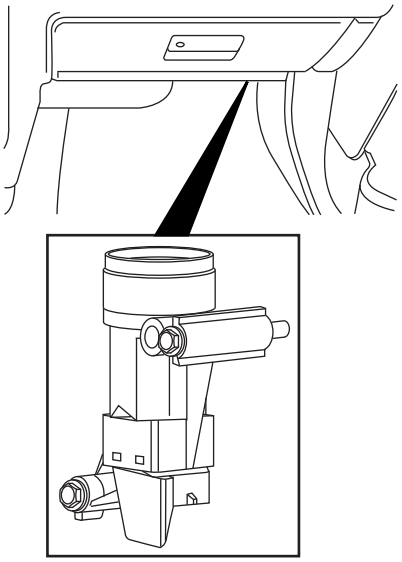
**Note:** With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

## FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

The fuel pump shut-off switch is located in the front passenger footwell area in the right upper corner.



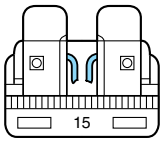
To reset the switch:

1. Turn the ignition to the off position.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition to the on position.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to off position.
6. Make another check for leaks.

## FUSES AND RELAYS

### Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.




**Note:** Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

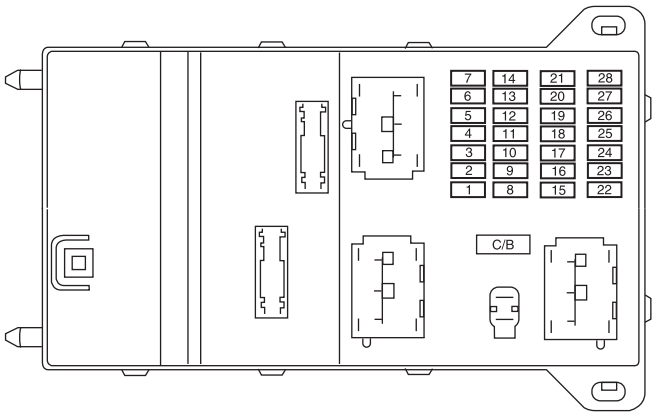
***Standard fuse amperage rating and color***

| COLOR | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Fuse rating** | **Mini fuses** | **Standard fuses** | **Maxi fuses** | **Cartridge maxi fuses** | **Fuse link cartridge** |
| 2A | Grey | Grey | — | — | — |
| 3A | Violet | Violet | — | — | — |
| 4A | Pink | Pink | — | — | — |
| 5A | Tan | Tan | — | — | — |
| 7.5A | Brown | Brown | — | — | — |
| 10A | Red | Red | — | — | — |
| 15A | Blue | Blue | — | — | — |
| 20A | Yellow | Yellow | Yellow | Blue | Blue |
| 25A | Natural | Natural | — | — | — |
| 30A | Green | Green | Green | Pink | Pink |
| 40A | — | — | Orange | Green | Green |
| 50A | — | — | Red | Red | Red |
| 60A | — | — | Blue | Yellow | Yellow |
| 70A | — | — | Tan | — | Brown |
| 80A | — | — | Natural | Black | Black |

### Passenger compartment fuse panel

The fuse panel is located below and to the left of the steering wheel by the brake pedal. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.

To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel cover.




The fuses are coded as follows.

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 10A | Backup lamps (automatic transmission), Electrochromatic mirror |
| 2 | 20A | Horns |
| 3 | 15A | Battery saver: Interior lamps, Puddle lamps, Trunk lamp, Power windows |
| 4 | 15A | Parklamps, Side markers, License plate lamps |
| 5 | — | Not used |
| 6 | — | Not used |
| 7 | — | Not used |
| 8 | 30A | Rear window defroster |
| 9 | 10A | Heated mirrors |
| 10 | 30A | Starter coil, PCM |
| 11 | 15A | High beams |

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 12 | 7.5A | Delay accessories: Radio head units, Moon roof, Lock switch illumination, Electrochromatic mirrors, Ambient lighting |
| 13 | 7.5A | Cluster, Analog clock, Climate control head units |
| 14 | 15A | Washer pump |
| 15 | 20A | Cigar lighter |
| 16 | 15A | Door lock actuator, Decklid lock solenoid |
| 17 | 20A | Subwoofer |
| 18 | 20A | Radio head units, OBDII connector |
| 19 | 7.5A | Not used (Spare) |
| 20 | 7.5A | Power mirrors, Satellite radio module, All wheel drive |
| 21 | 7.5A | Stop lamps, CHMSL |
| 22 | 7.5A | Audio |
| 23 | 7.5A | Wiper relay coil, Cluster logic |
| 24 | 7.5A | OCS (Passenger's seat), PAD indicator |
| 25 | 7.5A | RCM |
| 26 | 7.5A | PATS Transceiver, Brake shift interlock solenoid, Brake pedal switch, Automatic transmission relay coil, Reverse switch (back-up lamps for manual transmission) |
| 27 | 7.5A | Cluster, Climate control head units |
| 28 | 10A | ABS/Traction Control, Heated seats, Compass, Reverse sensing system |
| C/B | 30A Circuit Breaker | Moon roof power, Delayed accessory (SJB fuse 12, power window) |

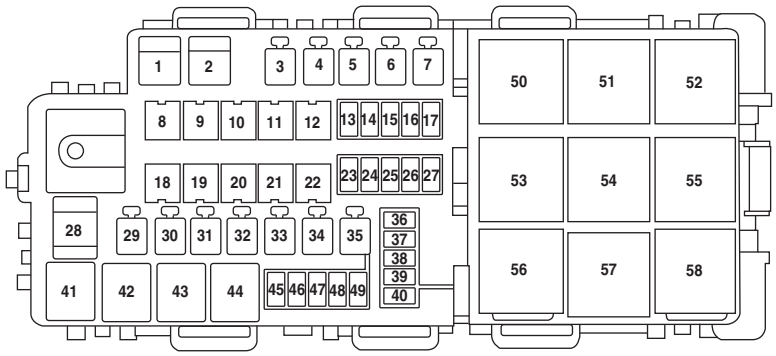
### Power distribution box

The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

**WARNING:** Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

**WARNING:** To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.




The high-current fuses are coded as follows.

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | 60A*** | SJB power feed (fuses 12, 13, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, C/B) |
| 2 | 60A*** | SJB power feed (fuses 1, 2, 4, 10, 11) |

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 3 | 40A** | Powertrain power, PCM relay coil |
| 4 | 40A** | Blower motor |
| 5 | — | Not used |
| 6 | 40A** | Rear window defroster, Heated mirrors |
| 7 | 40A** | PETA Pump (PZEV) power feed |
| 8 | 40A** | ABS pump |
| 9 | 20A** | Wipers |
| 10 | 30A** | ABS Valves |
| 11 | 20A** | Heated seats |
| 12 | — | Not used |
| 13 | 10A* | SYNC |
| 14 | 15A* | Ignition switch |
| 15 | — | Not used |
| 16 | 15A* | Transmission |
| 17 | 10A* | Alternator sense |
| 18 | — | Not used |
| 19 | 40A** | Logic feed to SJB (solid state devices) |
| 20 | — | Not used |
| 21 | — | Not used |
| 22 | 20A** | Console power point |
| 23 | 10A* | PCM KAM, FNR5 and canister vent solenoid |
| 24 | 15A* | Fog lamps |
| 25 | 10A* | A/C Compressor clutch |
| 26 | — | Not used |
| 27 | — | Not used |
| 28 | 60A*** | Engine cooling fan |
| 29 | — | Not used |
| 30 | 30A** | Fuel pump/injectors relay |

| Fuse/Relay Location | Fuse Amp Rating | Protected Circuits |
|---|---|---|
| 31 | — | Not used |
| 32 | 30A** | Driver power seat |
| 33 | 20A** | Moon roof |
| 34 | — | Not used |
| 35 | — | Not used |
| 36 | 1A* | PCM diode |
| 37 | 1A* | One Touch Integrated Start (OTIS) diode |
| 38 | — | Not used |
| 39 | — | Not used |
| 40 | — | Not used |
| 41 | Relay | Fog lamp relay |
| 42 | Relay | Wiper park relay |
| 43 | Relay | A/C clutch relay |
| 44 | Relay | FNR5 transmission relay |
| 45 | 5A* | PETA Pump (PZEV) feedback |
| 46 | 15A* | Injectors |
| 47 | 15A* | PCM class B |
| 48 | 15A* | Coil on plug |
| 49 | 15A* | PCM class C |
| 50 | — | Not used |
| 51 | — | Not used |
| 52 | Full ISO Relay | Blower relay |
| 53 | — | Not used |
| 54 | Full ISO Relay | Fuel pump/injectors relay |
| 55 | Full ISO Relay | Wiper RUN relay |
| 56 | — | Not used |
| 57 | Full ISO Relay | PCM relay |
| 58 | High Current Relay | PETA Pump (PZEV) |
| *Mini fuses **A1 fuses ***A3 fuses | | |

## CHANGING THE TIRES

If you get a flat tire while driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed. Hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

**Note:** The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) indicator light will illuminate when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full functionality of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.

Have a flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the TPMS sensors, refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the TPMS sensor for damage.

**WARNING:** The use of tire sealants may damage your Tire Pressure Monitoring System and should not be used.

**WARNING:** Refer to *Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for important information. If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged, it will no longer function.

### Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information

**WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels and can be one of three types:

1. **T-type mini-spare:** This spare tire begins with the letter “T” for tire size and may have “Temporary Use Only” molded in the sidewall

2. **Full-size dissimilar spare with label on wheel:** This spare tire has a label on the wheel that states: “THIS TIRE AND WHEEL FOR TEMPORARY USE ONLY”

When driving with one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above, **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Try to repair the dissimilar spare tire

Use of one of the dissimilar spare tires listed above at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

3. **Full-size dissimilar spare without label on wheel**

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

The usage of a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability

- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a full-size dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

### Stopping and securing the vehicle

1. Park on a level surface, set the parking brake and activate the hazard flashers.

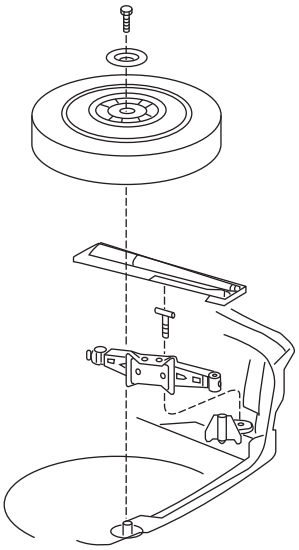
2. Place the gearshift lever in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or R (Reverse) (manual transmission) and turn the engine off.

#### *Removing the spare tire and jack*

1. Remove the carpeted load floor panel located in the rear of the vehicle and remove the lug wrench and long bolt from the tool bag.

2. Remove the bolt securing the spare tire using the lug wrench, then lift and remove the spare tire from the trunk.

3. Remove the jack retention bolt by turning it counterclockwise and remove the jack from the vehicle.



### *Tire change procedure*

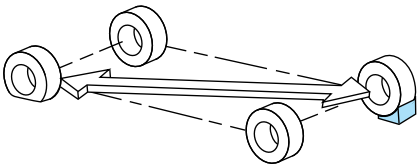
**WARNING:** To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.

**WARNING:** If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

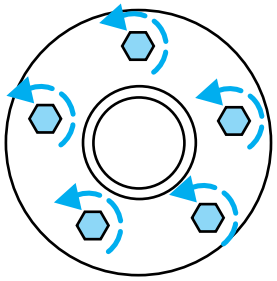
**WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

**Note:** Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.

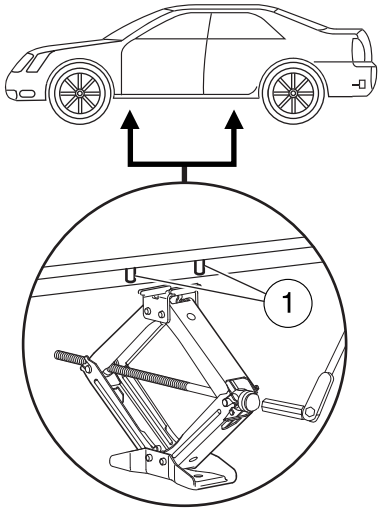
1. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tire. For example, if the left front tire is flat, block the right rear wheel.



2. Remove the center ornament (if equipped) from the wheel. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.



3. Put the jack in the jack locator next to the tire you are changing. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground.
**Note**: To avoid structural damage to the vehicle, ensure that the jack is centered between the two markings (1) on the bottom of the rocker flange.




**WARNING:** To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.

4. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

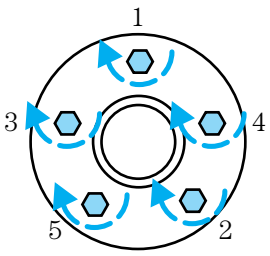
5. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward. Reinstall lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

If you are using the temporary tire, the lug nut washers will not appear to be flush with the rim. This is normal only when using the temporary spare tire.

6. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

7. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

8. Unblock the wheels.




### *Stowing the wheel and jack*

1. Fully collapse the jack and place it back in the storage area in the trunk.

2. Replace the jack retention bolt to secure the jack.

3. Place the tire in the storage bin in the trunk.

4. Replace the cover plate and bolt.

- When storing a flat road tire, flip the cover plate over and use the long bolt.
- When storing the temporary spare tire, replace the cover plate and use the short bolt.

5. Secure the bolt using the lug wrench.

6. Insert the lug wrench and bolt in the tool bag and place over the jack.

7. Replace the carpeted load floor panel.

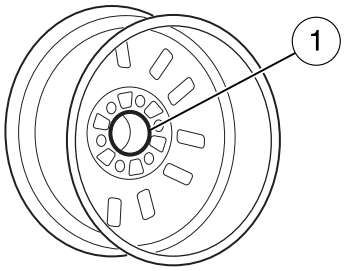
## WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

| Bolt size | Wheel lug nut torque* | |
|---|---|---|
| | lb. ft. | N•m |
| M12 x 1.5 | 100 | 135 |
| * Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners. | | |

**WARNING:** When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Ensure that any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub are secured so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

**Note:** Inspect the wheel pilot hole prior to installation. If there is visible corrosion in wheel pilot hole, remove loose particles by wiping with clean rag and apply grease. Apply grease only to the wheel pilot hole surface by smearing a “dime” (1 square cm) sized glob of grease around the wheel pilot surface (1) with end of finger. DO NOT apply grease to lugnut/stud holes or wheel-to-brake surfaces.




### JUMP STARTING

**WARNING:** The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

**WARNING:** Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

**Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.**

### Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the automatic transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12–volt supply to start your vehicle.**

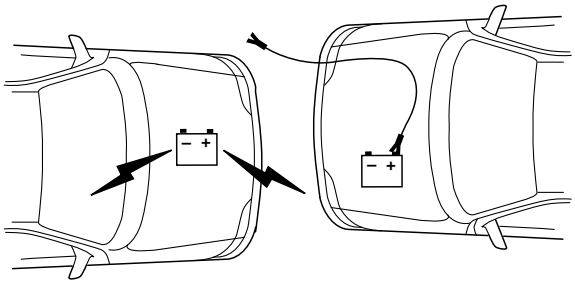
2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.

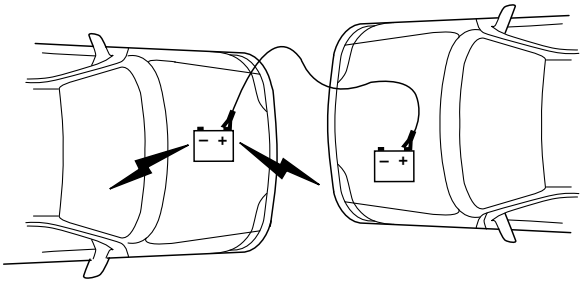
5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

### Connecting the jumper cables

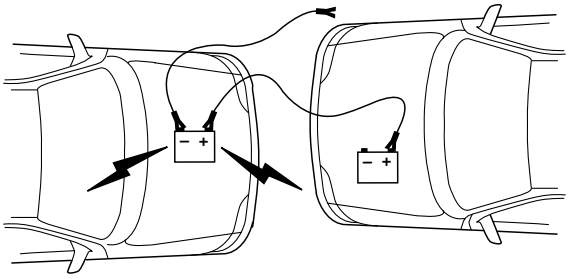



1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

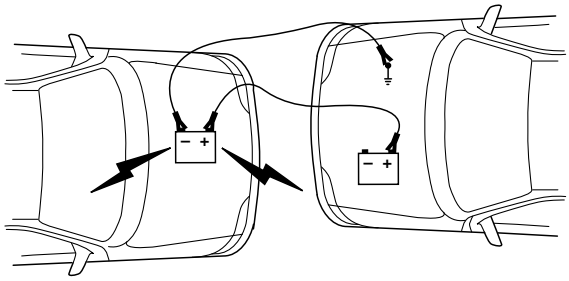
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system. **Do not** use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as *grounding* points.

**WARNING:** Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

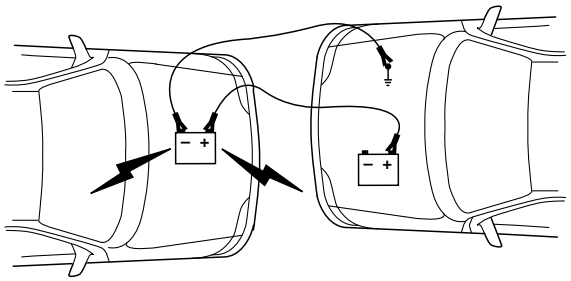
### Jump starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.

2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

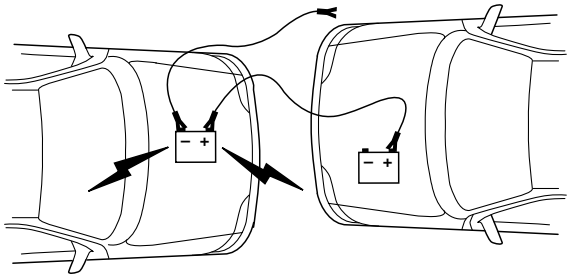
### Removing the jumper cables



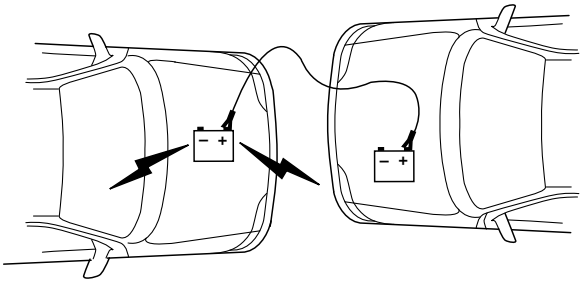
**Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.**

1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

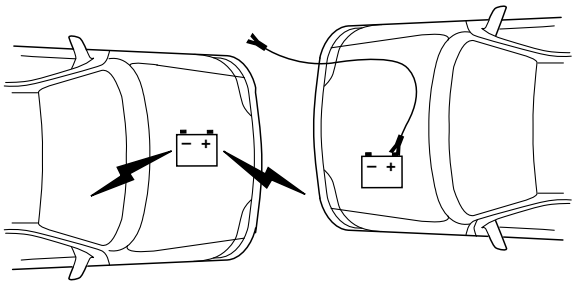
**Note:** In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.



2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.



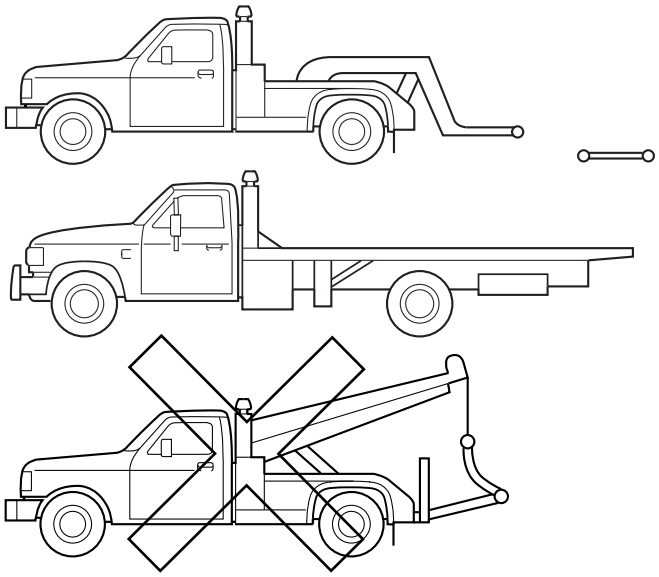
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.



4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

## WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

It is recommended that your vehicle be towed with a wheel lift or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.

**If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.**

If your vehicle is to be towed using wheel lift equipment, the non-lifted wheels must be placed on a dolly to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Place a rag on top of the hoist cable below the fascia when loading or unloading a vehicle on a flatbed wrecker to prevent surface damage to the fascia.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

### Emergency towing

In case of a roadside emergency with a disabled vehicle (without access to wheel dollies, car hauling trailer, or flatbed transport vehicle) your vehicle (regardless of transmission powertrain configuration) can be flat towed (all wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- Vehicle is facing forward so that it is being towed in a forward direction.
- Place the transmission in N (Neutral). Refer to *Brake shift interlock* in the *Driving* chapter for specific instructions if you cannot move the gear shift lever into N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is not to exceed 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

## GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

Warranty repairs to your vehicle must be performed by an authorized Ford, Lincoln, or Mercury dealer. While any authorized dealer handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling authorized dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction.

Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all authorized dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another authorized dealer.

A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the authorized dealer. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

### Away from home

If you are away from home when your vehicle needs service, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center or use the online resources listed below to find the nearest authorized dealer.

In the United States:

**Mailing Address**
Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121

**Telephone**
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)

**Online**
Additional information and resources are available online at www.genuineservice.com.

- U.S. dealer locator by Dealer Name, City/State, or Zip Code
- Owner Guides
- Maintenance Schedules
- Recalls
- Ford Extended Service Plans
- Ford Genuine Accessories
- Service specials and promotions.

In Canada:

**Mailing Address (Ford vehicles)**
Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)

**Online**
www.ford.ca

**Mailing Address (Lincoln vehicles)**
Lincoln Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4

**Telephone**
1-800-387-9333

**Online**
www.lincolncanada.com

### *Additional Assistance*

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing authorized dealer.

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center

In order to help you serve you better, please have the following information available when contacting a Customer Relationship Center:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the authorized dealer and city where located
- The vehicle's current odometer reading

In some states, you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

### IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR

2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR

3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

## THE BETTER BUSINESS BUREAU (BBB) AUTO LINE PROGRAM (U.S. ONLY)

Your satisfaction is important to Ford Motor Company and to your dealer. If a warranty concern has not been resolved using the three-step procedure outlined on the first page of the *Customer Assistance* section, you may be eligible to participate in the BBB AUTO LINE program.

The BBB AUTO LINE program consists of two parts – mediation and arbitration. During mediation, a representative of the BBB will contact both you and Ford Motor Company to explore options for settlement of the claim. If an agreement is not reached during mediation and your claim is eligible, you may participate in the arbitration process. An arbitration hearing will be scheduled so that you can present your case in an informal setting before an impartial person. The arbitrator will consider the testimony provided and make a decision after the hearing.

You are not bound by the decision, but should you choose to accept the BBB AUTO LINE decision, Ford must abide by the accepted decision as well. Disputes submitted to the BBB AUTO LINE program are usually decided within forty days after you file your claim with the BBB.

BBB AUTO LINE Application: Using the information provided below, please call or write to request a program application. You will be asked for your name and address, general information about your new vehicle, information about your warranty concerns, and any steps you have already taken to try to resolve them. A Customer Claim Form will be mailed that will need to be completed, signed and returned to the BBB along with proof of ownership. Upon receipt, the BBB will review the claim for eligibility under the Program Summary Guidelines.

**You can get more information by calling BBB AUTO LINE at 1-800-955-5100, or writing to:**

**BBB AUTO LINE**
**4200 Wilson Boulevard, Suite 800**
**Arlington, Virginia 22203–1833**

BBB AUTO LINE applications can also be requested by calling the Ford Motor Company Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673.

**Note:** Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures, or to discontinue this process at any time without notice and without obligation.

### UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

For vehicles delivered to authorized Canadian dealers. In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the authorized dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

### FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN

You can get more protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP) coverage. It provides the following:

- Benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: reimbursement for rentals; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items).
- Protection against covered repair costs after your Bumper-to-Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any participating authorized dealer. There are several plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations which can be tailored to fit your own driving needs. Ford ESP also offers reimbursement benefits for towing and rental coverage.

When you buy Ford ESP, you receive Peace-of-Mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 participating authorized dealers.

If you did not take advantage of the Ford Extended Service Plan at the time of purchasing your vehicle, you may still be eligible. Since this information is subject to change, please ask your authorized dealer for complete details about Ford Extended Service Plan coverage options, or visit the Ford ESP website at www.ford-esp.com.

### GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer cannot help you, contact:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
FORD EXPORT OPERATIONS
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
FAX: (313) 390-0804
Email: expcac@ford.com

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest authorized dealer. If the authorized dealer employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Export Operations.

**Customers in the U.S. should call 1-800-392-3673.**

## ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
P.O. Box 07150
Detroit, Michigan 48207

Or call:

**For a free publication catalog, order toll free: 1-800-782-4356**

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website: www.helminc.com.

*(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)*

### Obtaining a French owner's guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your authorized dealer or by writing to:
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
Service Publications CHQ202
The Canadian Road
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, ON, Canada
L6J 5E4

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to *http://www.safercar.gov;* or write to:

Administrator
1200 New Jersey Avenue, Southeast
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from *http://www.safercar.gov.*

### REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (CANADA ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, using their toll-free number: 1–800–333–0510.

## WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A), which is available from your authorized dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time. Use Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42) which is available from your authorized dealer.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**

**Exterior chrome**

- Wash the vehicle first, using cool or lukewarm water and a neutral pH shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- Use Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15), available from your authorized dealer. Apply the product as you would a wax to clean bumpers and other chrome parts; allow the cleaner to dry for a few minutes, then wipe off the haze with a clean, dry rag.
- **Never use abrasive materials such as steel wool or plastic pads as they can scratch the chrome surface.**
- After polishing chrome bumpers, apply a coating of Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product to help protect from environmental effects.

### WAXING

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives; use Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A), which is available from your authorized dealer, or an equivalent quality product.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

### PAINT CHIPS

Your authorized dealer has touch-up paint to match your vehicle’s color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver’s door jamb) to your authorized dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

### ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A), which is available from your authorized dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your authorized dealer.

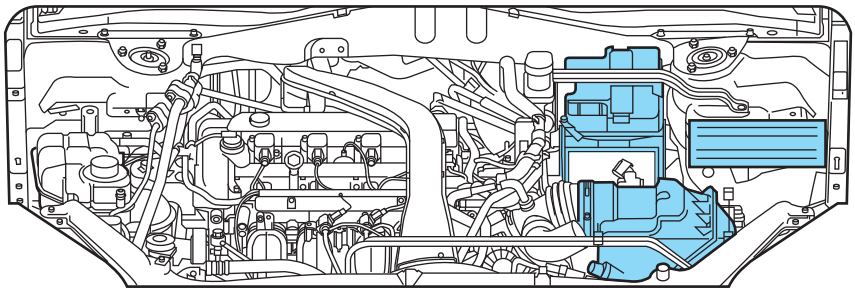
# Cleaning

## ENGINE

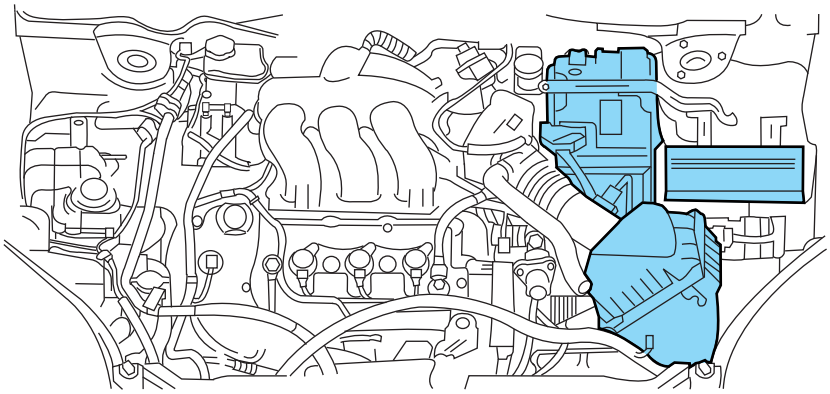
Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean. In Canada use Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (CXC-66-A).
- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

### 2.3L I4 ENGINE



### 3.0L DOHC ENGINE



### PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your authorized dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A).
- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).
- For plastic headlamp lenses, use Motorcraft Ultra Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23).

### WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, water repellent coatings, tree sap, or other organic contamination; these contaminants may cause squeaking or chatter noise from the blades, and streaking and smearing of the windshield. To clean these items, follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your authorized dealer.
- The wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (ZC-32-A), available from your authorized dealer. This washer fluid contains special solution in addition to alcohol which helps to remove the hot wax deposited on the wiper blade and windshield from automated car wash facilities. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.

If you cannot remove those streaks after cleaning with the glass cleaner or if the wipers chatter and move in a jerky motion, clean the outer surface of the windshield and the wiper blades using a sponge or soft cloth with a neutral detergent or mild-abrasive cleaning solution. After cleaning, rinse the windshield and wiper blades with clean water. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse the windshield with water.

**Do not use sharp objects, such as a razor blade, to clean the inside of the rear window or to remove decals, as it may cause damage to the rear window defroster's heated grid lines.**

### INSTRUMENT PANEL/INTERIOR TRIM AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel, interior trim areas and cluster lens with a clean and damp white cotton cloth, then with a clean and dry white cotton cloth; you may also use Motorcraft Dash & Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A) on the instrument panel and interior trim areas.

- Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.

- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish of the instrument panel, interior trim and cluster lens.

**WARNING:** Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

If a staining liquid like coffee/juice has been spilled on the instrument panel or on interior trim surfaces, clean as follows:

1. Wipe up spilled liquid using a clean, white, cotton cloth.

2. Apply Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-11-A) [In Canada use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101)] to the wiped area and spread around evenly.

3. Apply more Motorcraft cleaner to a clean, white, cotton cloth and press the cloth onto the soiled area–allow this to set at room temperature for 30 minutes.

4. Remove the soaked cloth, and if it is not soiled badly, use this cloth to clean the area by using a rubbing motion for 60 seconds.

5. Following this, wipe area dry with a clean, white, cotton cloth.

### INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats, safety belts and seats equipped with side airbags:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14). In Canada, use Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (CXC-101).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

# Cleaning

**WARNING:** Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's safety belts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

**WARNING:** On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side-airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a collision.

## LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

- To clean, use a soft cloth with Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-11-A). In Canada, use Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- To help maintain its resiliency and color, use the Motorcraft Deluxe Leather Care Kit (ZC-11-D), available from your authorized dealer. In Canada, use Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (CXC-93) or an equivalent high–quality leather care product.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating.

**Note:** In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

## UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

## FORD AND LINCOLN MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your Ford or Lincoln Mercury authorized dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft Car Wash (Canada only) (CXC-83)

Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft Custom Clear Coat Polish (ZC-8-A)

Motorcraft Custom Vinyl Protectant (ZC-40-A)

Motorcraft Dash and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A)

Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (U.S. only) (ZC-11-A)

Motorcraft Leather Care Kit (U.S. only) (ZC-11-D)

Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3-A)

Motorcraft Dusting Cloth (ZC-24)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (U.S. only) (ZC-20)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo (Canada only) (CXC-66-A)

Motorcraft Multi-Purpose Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-101)

Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft Premium Liquid Wax (ZC-53-A)

Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate (U.S. only) (ZC-32-A)

Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (U.S. only) (ZC-14)

Motorcraft Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)

Motorcraft Triple Clean (U.S. only) (ZC-13)

Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23)

Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)

Motorcraft Wash and Wax (Canada only) (CXC-95)

Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37-A)

## SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle, we provide *scheduled maintenance information* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

## PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning (cigarettes) material away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

### Working with the engine off

- Automatic transmission:

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels.

- Manual transmission:

1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch and place the gearshift in 1 (First).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels.

### Working with the engine on

- Automatic transmission:

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

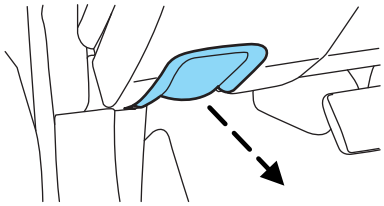
- Manual transmission:

1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch and place the gearshift in N (Neutral).
2. Block the wheels.

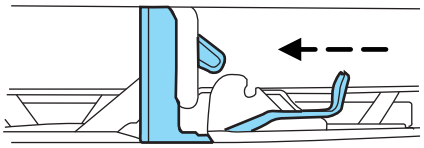
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

## OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom of the instrument panel near the steering column.



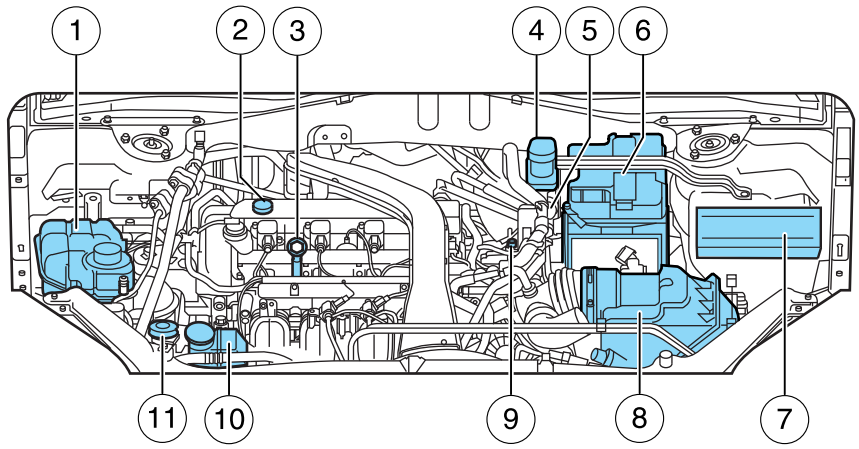
2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch that is located under the front center of the hood.



3. Lift the hood and support it with the prop rod.

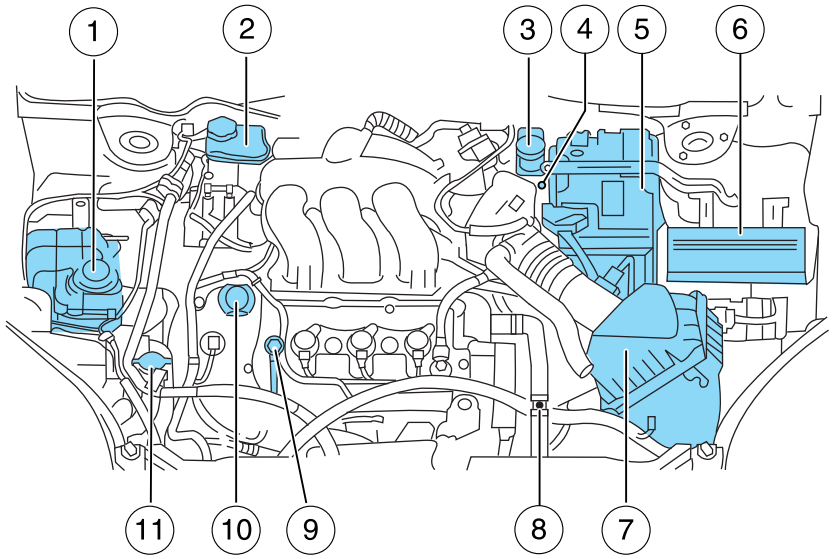
## IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

### 2.3L I4 engine



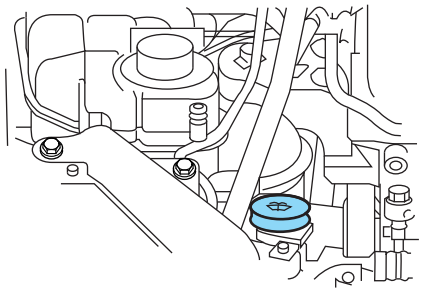

1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Engine oil filler cap
3. Engine oil dipstick
4. Brake/Clutch fluid reservoir
5. Transmission fluid dipstick (automatic transmission only)
6. Battery
7. Power distribution box
8. Air filter assembly
9. Coolant bleed valve
10. Power steering fluid reservoir
11. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

### 3.0L V6 Duratec engine




1. Engine coolant reservoir
2. Power steering fluid reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Transmission fluid dipstick (automatic transmission only)
5. Battery
6. Power distribution box
7. Air filter assembly
8. Coolant bleed valve
9. Engine oil dipstick
10. Engine oil filler cap
11. Windshield washer fluid reservoir

### WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID



Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

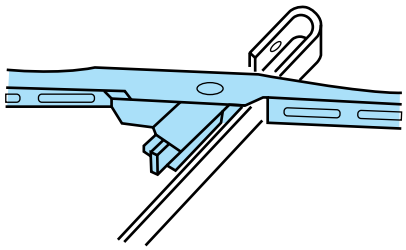
Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specification WSB-M8B16-A2. Do not use any special washer fluid such as windshield water repellent type fluid or bug wash. They may cause squeaking, chatter noise, streaking and smearing. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

**WARNING:** If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40°F (5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

**Note:** Do not put washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir. Washer fluid placed in the cooling system may harm engine and cooling system components.

### CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES



1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Turn the blade at an angle from the wiper arm. Push the lock pin manually to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm.

2. Attach the new wiper to the wiper arm and press it into place until a click is heard.

Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

Poor wiper quality can be improved by cleaning the wiper blades and the windshield, refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

### ENGINE OIL

#### Checking the engine oil

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.

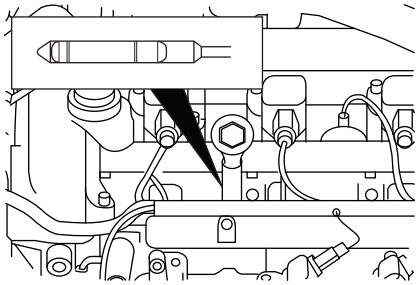
2. Turn the engine off and wait a few minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmissions) or 1 (First) (manual transmissions).

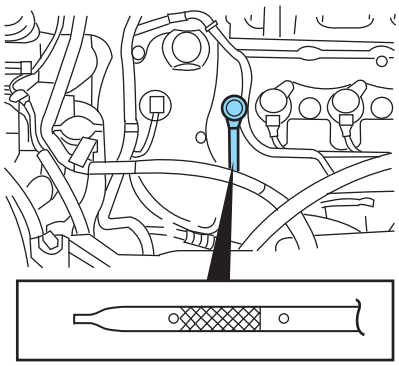
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.

5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level dipstick.

- 2.3L I4 engine

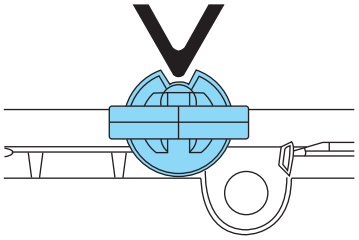


- 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine

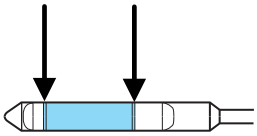


6. Wipe the dipstick clean. Insert the dipstick fully, then remove it again.

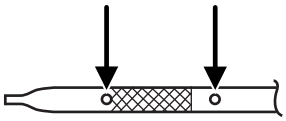
On 2.3L I4 engine, be sure the notch in the dipstick flange is aligned with the V on the engine when reinserting it.



• 2.3L I4 engine

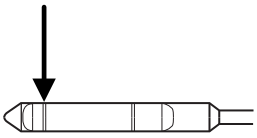


• 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine

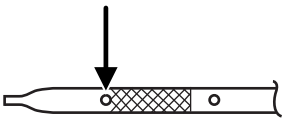


•If the oil level is **within this range,** the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**

• 2.3L I4 engine

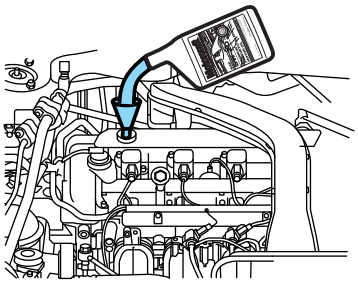


• 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine

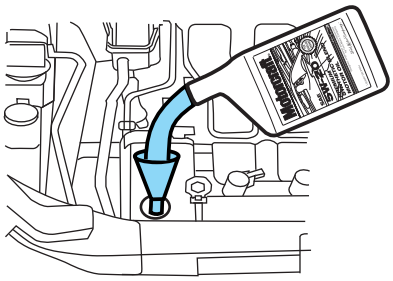


•If the oil level is **below this mark,** engine **oil must be added** to raise the level within the normal operating range.

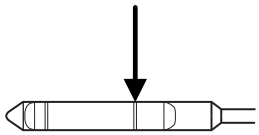
• 2.3L I4 engine



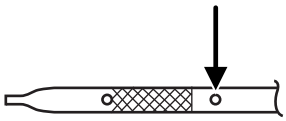
- 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine



- If required, add engine oil to the engine. Refer to *Adding engine oil* in this chapter.
- 2.3L I4 engine



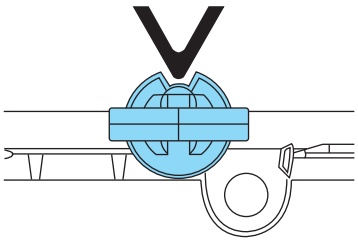
- 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine



•**Do not overfill the engine with oil. Oil levels above this mark may cause engine damage.** If the engine is overfilled, some oil must be removed from the engine by an authorized dealer.

7. Put the dipstick back in and ensure it is fully seated.

On 2.3L I4 engine, be sure the notch in the dipstick flange is aligned with the V on the engine when it is reinserted.



### Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.

2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal operating range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.

3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the normal operating range on the engine oil level dipstick.

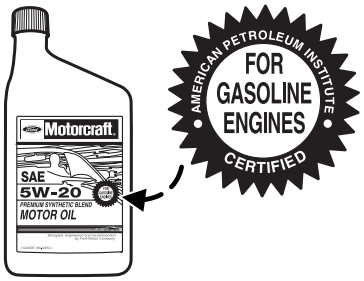
4. Install the dipstick and ensure it is fully seated.

5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise until it stops.

**To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level dipstick and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.**

### Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.




#### *Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil*

Only use oils “Certified For Gasoline Engines” by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ILSAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine and engine’s warranty, use Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent SAE 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle’s engine.**

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in *scheduled maintenance information.*

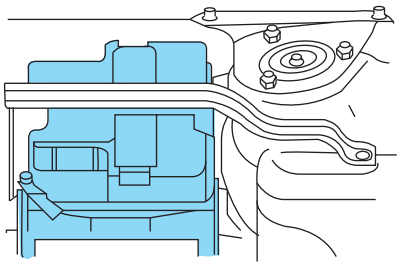
When changing the oil filter on the 2.3L engine, you must also replace the filter cap O-ring. The oil filter drain plug O-ring must also be replaced whenever the oil filter drain plug is removed. Reuse of the O-rings may cause engine oil leakage and may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the O-rings are not replaced.

Ford production and Motorcraft replacement oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft oil filter or another with equivalent performance for your engine application.

### BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.



**If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.**

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

It is recommended that the negative battery cable terminal be disconnected from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period of time. This will minimize the discharge of your battery during storage.

**Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.**

**WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

**WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

**WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling.**

Because your vehicle's engine is electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or the neutral position (manual transmission), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.

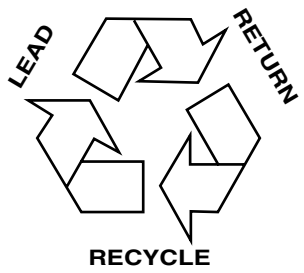
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.

- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
- **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation to its optimum shift feel.

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.




## ENGINE COOLANT

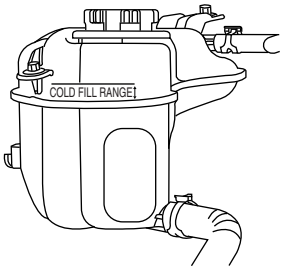
### Checking engine coolant

The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the intervals listed in *scheduled maintenance information.* The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of -34°F (-36°C). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester (such as the Rotunda Battery and Antifreeze Tester, 014–R1060). The level of coolant should be maintained at the “FULL COLD” level or within the “COLD FILL RANGE” in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50/50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Freeze protection down to -34°F (-36°C).**
- **Boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Proper function of calibrated gauges.**

When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.




- The engine coolant should be at the “FULL COLD” level or within the “COLD FILL RANGE” as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in this chapter.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

**Note:** Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

### Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool,** until the appropriate fill level is obtained.

**WARNING:** Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

**WARNING:** Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **Add Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant or equivalent meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B51-A1.** Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

**Note:** Use of Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets or an equivalent product meeting Ford specification WSS-M99B37-B6, may darken the color of Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant from yellow to golden tan.

**Note:** When adding more than 1 quart (1.0 liter) of coolant it is necessary to use the coolant bleed valve. Failure to bleed the cooling system when adding engine coolant may cause engine damage. Refer to the Cooling section of the *Workshop Manual*.

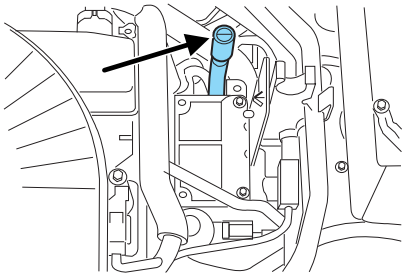
- **Do not add/mix an orange-colored, extended life coolant such as Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant, meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B44-D, or DEX-COOL® brand with the factory-filled coolant.** Mixing Motorcraft Specialty Orange Engine Coolant or any orange-colored extended life product such as DEX-COOL® brand with your factory filled coolant can result in degraded corrosion protection.
- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

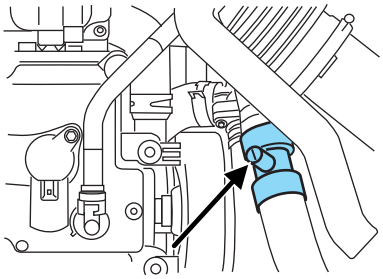
Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the cooling system by following these steps:

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (an opaque plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.

- 2.3L coolant bleed valve



- 3.0L coolant bleed valve



5. Open the coolant bleed valve on the back of the engine water outlet for the 2.3L engine or the coolant bleed valve located on the upper radiator hose for the 3.0L engine.
6. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture (see above), to within the “COLD FILL RANGE” or the “FULL COLD” level on the reservoir.

7. Close the bleed valve and reinstall the cap on the coolant reservoir. Turn the cap until it is tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration. Refer to the *Checking engine coolant* section. If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to –34°F [–36°C]), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your authorized dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

### Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant in vehicles originally equipped with Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

### Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

### Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than –34°F [–36°C]):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**

- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

### What you should know about fail-safe cooling (2.3L I4 engine only)

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

#### *How fail-safe cooling works*

If the engine begins to overheat:

- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the H (hot) area.
- The symbol will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

***When fail-safe mode is activated***

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to an authorized dealer.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.

**WARNING:** Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

**Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible.**

## FUEL FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a lifetime fuel filter that is integrated with the fuel tank. Regular maintenance or replacement is not needed.

## WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

### Important safety precautions

**WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in serious personal injury.

**WARNING:** Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

**WARNING:** Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.

- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

**WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

**WARNING:** The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

### *Refueling*

**WARNING:** Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause severe injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others:

- Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island;
- Turn off your engine when you are refueling;
- Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle;
- Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel;
- Stay outside your vehicle and do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places;
- Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.

- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

### Fuel filler cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise until it spins off.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it clicks at least once.

If the check fuel cap light or a “check fuel cap” message comes on, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. The light or message can come on after several driving events after you’ve refueled your vehicle.

At the next opportunity, safely pull off of the road, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it. The check fuel cap light or “check fuel cap” message may not reset immediately; it may take several driving cycles for the check fuel cap light or “check fuel cap” message to turn off. A driving cycle consists of an engine start-up (after four or more hours with the engine off) followed by city and highway driving.

Continuing to drive with the check fuel cap light or “check fuel cap” message on may cause the light to turn on as well.

**If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford, Motorcraft or other certified fuel filler cap is not used.**

**WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

**WARNING:** If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in personal injury.

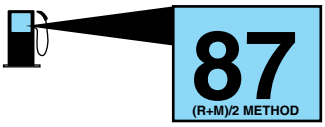
### Choosing the right fuel

Use only UNLEADED fuel or UNLEADED fuel blended with a maximum of 10% ethanol. Do not use fuel ethanol (E85), diesel, methanol, leaded fuel or any other fuel. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives.

**Note:** Use of any fuel other than those recommended may cause powertrain damage, a loss of vehicle performance, and repairs may not be covered under warranty.

### Octane recommendations




Your vehicle is designed to use "Regular" unleaded gasoline with a pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. We do not recommend the use of gasolines labeled as "Regular" in high altitude areas that are sold with octane ratings less than 87.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your authorized dealer to prevent any engine damage.

### Fuel quality

If you are experiencing starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, try a different brand of unleaded gasoline. "Premium" unleaded gasoline is not recommended for vehicles designed to use "Regular" unleaded gasoline because it may cause these problems to become more pronounced. If the problems persist, see your authorized dealer.

Do not add aftermarket fuel additive products to your fuel tank. It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. These products have not been approved for your engine and could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-Wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-Wide Fuel Charter.

### Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated "cleaner-burning" gasolines to improve air quality, per the recommendations in the *Choosing the right fuel* section.

### Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal.
- Normally, adding 1 gallon (3.8L) of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 1 gallon (3.8L) may be required.
- The *Service engine soon* indicator may come on. For more information on the *Service engine soon* indicator, refer to *Warning lights and chimes* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

## ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

### Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are

NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles–3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

### Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

**The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.**

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than two automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

### Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).

2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).

3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.

4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

### Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

#### *Habits*

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between the top gears occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.

- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

***Maintenance***

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in *scheduled maintenance information.*

***Conditions***

- Heavily loading a vehicle may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example; bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

### EPA fuel economy estimates

Every new vehicle should have a window sticker containing EPA fuel economy estimates. Contact your authorized dealer if the window sticker is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA fuel economy estimates should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.

## EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

**WARNING:** Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the *Service engine soon* indicator, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

An improperly operating or damaged exhaust system may allow exhaust to enter the vehicle. Have a damaged or improperly operating exhaust system inspected and repaired immediately.

**WARNING:** Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal also lists engine displacement.

Please consult your *Warranty Guide/Customer Information Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

### On board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). The OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists your authorized dealer in properly servicing your vehicle. When the *Service engine soon* indicator illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause the *Service engine soon* indicator to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel—the engine may misfire or run poorly.

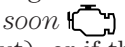
3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened. See *Fuel filler cap* in this chapter.

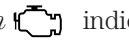
4. Driving through deep water—the electrical system may be wet.

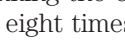
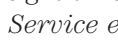
These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel, properly tightening the fuel cap or letting the electrical system dry out. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the *Service engine soon* indicator should stay off the next time the engine is started. A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving. No additional vehicle service is required.

If the *Service engine soon* indicator remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity. Although some malfunctions detected by the OBD-II may not have symptoms that are apparent, continued driving with the *Service engine soon* indicator on can result in increased emissions, lower fuel economy, reduced engine and transmission smoothness, and lead to more costly repairs.

### Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

Some state/provincial and local governments may have Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test if the *Service engine soon*  indicator is on or not working properly (bulb is burned out), or if the OBD-II system has determined that some of the emission control systems have not been properly checked. In this case, the vehicle is considered not ready for I/M testing.

If the *Service engine soon*  indicator is on or the bulb does not work, the vehicle may need to be serviced. Refer to the On board diagnostics (OBD-II) description in this chapter.

If the vehicle's engine or transmission has just been serviced, or the battery has recently run down or been replaced, the OBD-II system may indicate that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing. To determine if the vehicle is ready for I/M testing, turn the ignition key to the on position for 15 seconds without cranking the engine. If the *Service engine soon*  indicator blinks eight times, it means that the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing; if the *Service engine soon*  indicator stays on solid, it means that the vehicle is ready for I/M testing.

The OBD-II system is designed to check the emission control system during normal driving. A complete check may take several days. If the vehicle is not ready for I/M testing, the following driving cycle consisting of mixed city and highway driving may be performed:

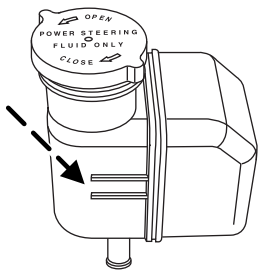
15 minutes of steady driving on an expressway/highway followed by 20 minutes of stop-and-go driving with at least four 30-second idle periods.

Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete. If the vehicle is still not ready for I/M testing, the above driving cycle will have to be repeated.

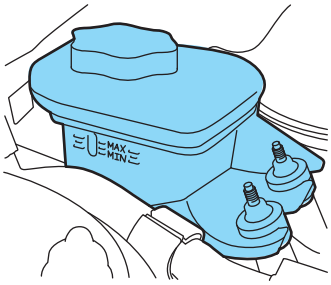
### POWER STEERING FLUID

Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the service interval schedules.

- 2.3L I4 Engine




- 3.0L V6 Engine




1. Start the engine and let it run until it reaches normal operating temperature (the engine coolant temperature gauge indicator will be near the center of the normal area between H and C).

2. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.

3. Turn the engine off.

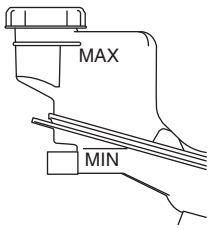
4. Check the fluid level in the reservoir. It should be between the MIN/MAX or upper and lower lines. Do not add fluid if the level is in this range.

5. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it reaches the range between the MIN/MAX or upper and lower lines. Be sure to put the cap back on the reservoir. Refer to *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* in this chapter for the proper fluid type.

### BRAKE/CLUTCH FLUID

Brake and clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the “MIN” and “MAX” lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from your authorized dealer immediately.




### TRANSMISSION FLUID

#### Checking 5–speed automatic transmission fluid (If equipped)

Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

**Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is warmed up (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.**

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.

2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.

3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.

4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.

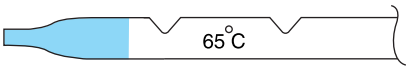
5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.

6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.

7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated areas for normal operating temperature.

### *Low fluid level*

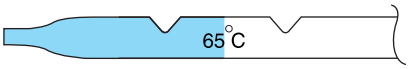
Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level is below the lower notch on the dipstick and the outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C).




### *Correct fluid level*

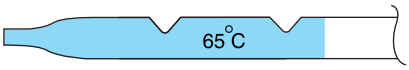
The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 149°F (65°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

The transmission fluid should be in between the notches if at normal operating temperature 149°F (65°C).




### *High fluid level*

Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.



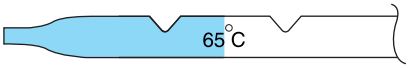

High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

### *Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels*

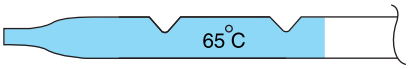
Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick and also in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

**Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 mL) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.




If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by an authorized dealer.




**An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

### Checking 6–speed automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

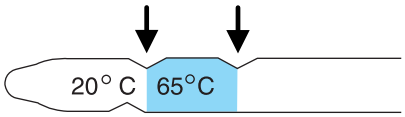
Refer to your *scheduled maintenance information* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

#### *Checking automatic transmission fluid at normal operating temperature (140°F-158°F [60°C-70°C])*

**Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is warmed up (approximately 20 miles [30 km]) until the engine coolant gauge indicates normal operating temperature. If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.**

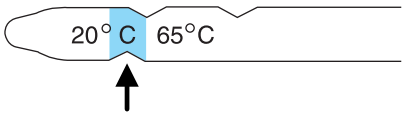
1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until the coolant gauge indicates normal operating temperature.
2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.
3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage (approximately 10–15 seconds in each position).
4. Move the gearshift lever to P (Park) and leave the engine running.

5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry, lint-free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.
7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should read within the hot range on the dipstick if at normal operating temperature (140°F-158°F [60°C-70°C]).



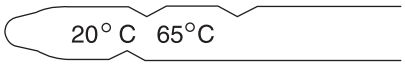

***Checking automatic transmission fluid at cool temperature (59°F-77°F [15°C-25°C])***

If a fluid check is necessary at a low fluid temperature (59°F-77°F [15°C-25°C]), perform the check using the cold range on the dipstick. However, the fluid must be re-checked at the proper fluid temperature.




***Low fluid level***

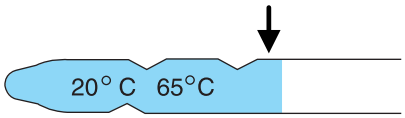
Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level does not show at all on the dipstick.




Driving the vehicle with less than the recommended fluid level may result in transmission failure. An under fill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage to the transmission.

***High fluid level***

Fluid levels above the normal operating range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage to the transmission.




High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

***Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels***

Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick and also in the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

**Note:** Only one ATF fluid specification has been tested and approved for use with the automatic 6-speed: Premium Automatic Transmission fluid. Mercon fluids cannot be used with the automatic 6-speed without damage or voiding warranty.

**Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.**

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

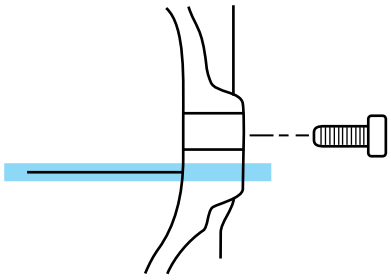
If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by an authorized dealer.

**An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.**

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

### Checking and adding manual transmission fluid (if equipped)

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Engage the parking brake fully – put in first gear.
3. Ensure the vehicle cannot move.
4. Clean the filler plug.
5. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.
6. Fluid level should be at bottom of the opening.



7. Add enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is within 3/8 inch (10mm) of the bottom of the filler hole with the vehicle on a level surface.
8. Install and tighten the fill plug securely.

Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to the *Maintenance product specifications and capacities* section in this chapter.

### AIR FILTER

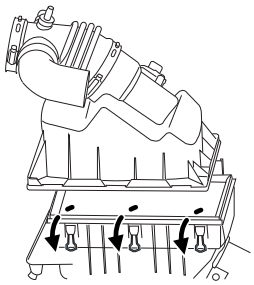
Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* in this chapter.

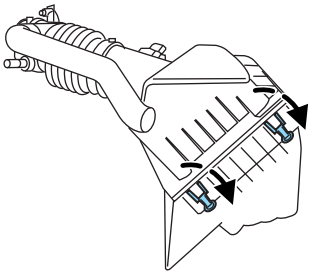
**WARNING:** To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and/or personal burn injuries do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

#### Changing the air filter element

- 2.3L I4 engine

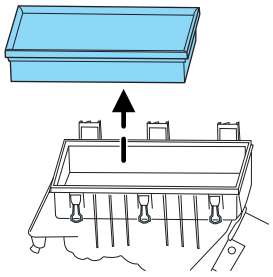


- 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine

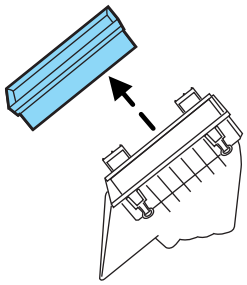


1. Release the clamps that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.

- 2.3L I4 engine



- 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine



3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.

5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.

6. Replace the air filter housing cover and secure the clamps.

**Note:** Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the correct air filter element is not used.

### MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

| Component | 2.3L I4 engine | 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine |
|---|---|---|
| Air filter element | FA-1785 | FA-1786 |
| Battery | BXT-96R | BXT-40R |
| Oil filter | FL-2017-B[1] | FL-500-S |
| PCV valve | [2] | |
| Spark Plugs | [3] | |

[1]When changing oil filter you must also replace the filter cap O-ring. The oil filter drain plug O-ring must also be replaced whenever the oil filter drain plug is removed. Reuse of the O-rings may cause engine oil leakage and may result in severe engine damage. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if the O-rings are not replaced.

[2]The PCV valve is a critical emission component. It is one of the items listed in *scheduled maintenance information* and is essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

For PCV valve replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the PCV valve.

**Replace the PCV valve with one that meets Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as a Motorcraft or equivalent replacement part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the emissions system if such a PCV valve is not used.**

[3]For spark plug replacement, see your authorized dealer. Refer to *scheduled maintenance information* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

**Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.**

## MAINTENANCE PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS AND CAPACITIES

| Item | Capacity | Ford part name | Ford part number / Ford specification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Brake (and clutch–if equipped) fluid | Between MIN and MAX on reservoir | Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid | PM-1-C / WSS-M6C62-A or WSS-M6C65-A1 |
| Door weatherstrips | — | Silicone Spray Lubricant | XL-6 / ESR-M13P4-A |
| Door latch, hood latch, auxiliary hood latch, door hinges, striker plates, seat tracks and fuel filler door hinge | — | Multi-Purpose Grease | XG-4 or XL-5 / ESB-M1C93-B |
| Lock cylinders | — | Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant | XL-1 / None |
| Engine coolant 2.3L engine | 8.56 quarts (8.1L) | Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant with bittering agent (yellow-colored)[1] | VC-7-B / WSS-M97B51-A1 |
| Engine coolant 3.0L engine | 9.72 quarts (9.2L) | | |
| Cooling system stop leak pellets | — | Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets | VC-6 / WSS-M99B37-B6 |

| Item | Capacity | Ford part name | Ford part number / Ford specification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Engine oil 2.3L engine | 4.5 quarts (4.25L) | Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) | XO-5W20-QSP (US) CXO-5W20-LSP12 (Canada) / WSS-M2C930-A with API Certification Mark |
| Engine oil 3.0L engine | 6.0 quarts (5.7L) | Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)[2] | |
| Lock cylinders | — | Motorcraft Penetrating and Lock Lubricant | XL-1/ None |
| Power steering fluid | Between MIN and MAX on reservoir | Motorcraft MERCON® V ATF | XT-5-QM / MERCON® V |
| Manual transmission fluid | 3.0 quarts (2.87L)[3] | Motorcraft 75W-90 gear oil (non-synthetic) | XT-4-QGL / WSS-M2C203-A1 and GL-4 |
| Automatic transmission fluid 5-Speed | 7.0 quarts (6.7L)[4] | Motorcraft FNR5 Automatic Transmission Fluid | XT-9-QMM5 / MAZDA M5 |
| Automatic transmission fluid 6-Speed | 7.4 quarts (7.0L)[4] | Motorcraft Premium Automatic Transmission Fluid | XT-8-QAW / WSS-M2C924-A |
| Rear differential (AWD) fluid | 2.4 pints (1.15L) | Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant | XY-80W90-QL / WSP-M2C197-A |

| Item | Capacity | Ford part name | Ford part number / Ford specification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Power transfer unit (PTU) fluid (AWD)[5] | 12 ounces (0.35L) | Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant | XY-75W140-QL / WSL-M2C192-A |
| Windshield washer fluid | 4.75 quarts (4.5L) | Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate | ZC-32-A / WSB-M8B16-A2 |
| Fuel tank (FWD) | 17.5 gallons (66.2L) | — | — |
| Fuel tank (AWD) | 16.5 gallons (62.4L) | — | — |

[1]Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

[2]Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

[3]Service refill capacity is determined by filling the transmission within 3/8 inch (10mm) of the bottom of the filler hole with the vehicle on a level surface.

[4]Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

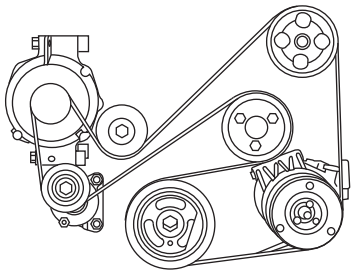
[5]The Power Transfer Unit is lubricated for life with synthetic lube. Lubricant levels are not to be checked or changed unless a leak is suspected or repair required. Replace Power Transfer Unit lubricant with specified synthetic lubricant anytime the unit is submerged in water.

See your authorized dealer for fluid level checking or filling of the Power Transfer Unit.

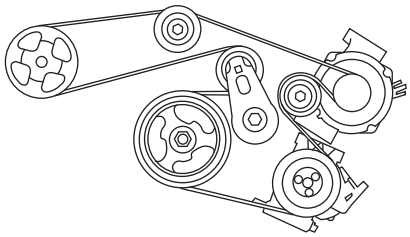
### ENGINE DATA

| Engine | 2.3L I4 engine | 3.0L DOHC V6 Duratec engine |
|---|---|---|
| Cubic inches | 140 | 182 |
| Required fuel | 87 octane | 87 octane |
| Firing order | 1-3-4-2 | 1-4-2-5-3-6 |
| Ignition system | Coil on plug | Coil on plug |
| Spark plug gap | 0.049–0.053 inch (1.25–1.35 mm) | 0.052–0.056 inch (1.32–1.42 mm) |
| Compression ratio | 9.7:1 | 10.0:1 |

#### Engine drivebelt routing



- 2.3L I4 Engine

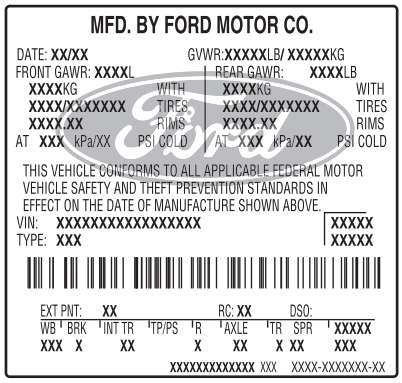


- 3.0L V6 Engine

## IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

### Safety Compliance Certification Label

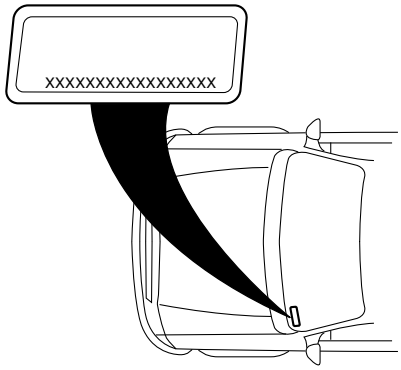
The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Safety Compliance Certification Label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Safety Compliance Certification Label may be located. The Safety Compliance Certification Label is located on the structure (B-Pillar) by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.



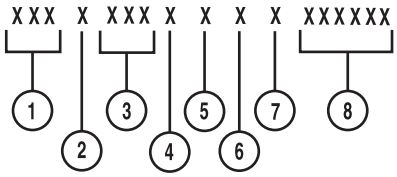

### Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the driver side instrument panel.

Please note that in the graphic, XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.



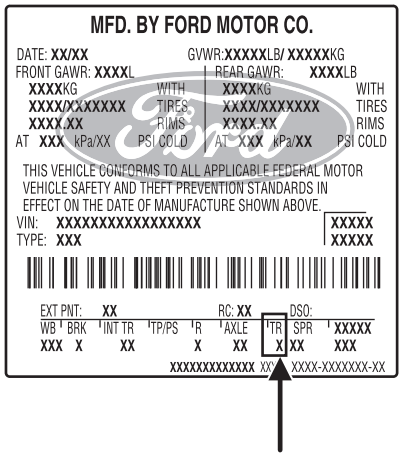
The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) contains the following information:




1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake system / Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) / Restraint System
3. Vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number

### TRANSMISSION CODE DESIGNATIONS

You can find a transmission code on the Safety Compliance Certification Label. The following table tells you which transmission each code represents.




| Description | Code |
|---|---|
| 5–Speed Manual Transmission A Mazda G5M | 5 |
| 5–Speed Automatic Transmission Mazda FNR5 | C |
| 6–Speed Automatic Transmission Aisin F21 | B |

## GENUINE MERCURY ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Genuine Mercury Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local Mercury or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Mercury's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Genuine Mercury Accessories found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessories. The accessories will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Following is a list of several Genuine Mercury Accessories. Not all accessories are available for all models. To find out what accessories are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: www.mercuryaccessories.com.

### Exterior style

Bug shields

Deflectors

Splash guards

### Interior style

All weather floor mats

Electrochromatic compass/temperature interior mirrors

Premium carpeted floor mats

### Lifestyle

Ash cup / smoker's package

Cargo organization and management

### Peace of mind

Remote start

Vehicle security systems

Wheel locks

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are added to the vehicle by the authorized dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

# Index


**A**

Accessory delay .....73
AdvanceTrac .....204
Air cleaner filter .....300, 302
Air conditioning .....46, 48
Airbag supplemental restraint system .....139, 148, 151
  and child safety seats .....141
  description .....139, 148, 151
  disposal .....154
  driver airbag .....141, 149, 152
  indicator light .....148, 150, 153
  operation .....141, 149, 152
  passenger airbag .....141, 149, 152
  side airbag .....148
All Wheel Drive (AWD), driving off road .....219
Ambient mood/lighting .....57
Antifreeze (see Engine coolant) .....276
Anti-lock brake system (see Brakes) .....202–203
Anti-theft system .....110, 114
  arming the system .....114
  disarming a triggered system .....115
  triggering .....115
Audio system (see Radio) .....16, 20, 28
Automatic transaxle
  fluid, adding .....295
  fluid, checking .....295
Automatic transmission
  driving an automatic overdrive .....212–213
  fluid, adding .....297, 299
  fluid, checking .....297, 299
  fluid, refill capacities .....303
  fluid, specification .....303
Auxiliary input jack (Line in) ....36
Axle
  lubricant specifications .....303

**B**

Battery .....274
  acid, treating emergencies .....274
  jumping a disabled battery ....240
  maintenance-free .....274
  replacement, specifications ...302
  servicing .....274
Belt-Minder® .....134
Booster seats .....166
Brakes .....202
  anti-lock .....202–203
  anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light .....203
  fluid, checking and adding ....295
  fluid, refill capacities .....303
  fluid, specifications .....303
  lubricant specifications .....303
  parking .....203
  shift interlock .....210
Break-in period .....5
Bulbs .....57

**C**

Capacities for refilling fluids ....303
Cassette tape player .....20
Cell phone use .....7
Changing a tire .....234
Child safety seats .....158
  attaching with tether straps ..164
  in front seat .....158

in rear seat .....158
LATCH .....161
recommendations .....156
Child safety seats - booster seats .....166
Cleaning your vehicle
engine compartment .....258
instrument panel .....260
interior .....261
plastic parts .....259
washing .....256
waxing .....257
wheels .....257
wiper blades .....260
Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) .....46, 48
Clock .....71
Clock adjust
6-CD in dash .....30
AM/FM/CD .....22
Clutch
fluid .....295
operation while driving .....215
recommended shift speeds ....216
Compass, electronic
set zone adjustment .....88
Console .....70
overhead .....70
Controls
power seat .....121
steering column .....78
Coolant
checking and adding .....276
refill capacities .....280, 303
specifications .....303
Cruise control
(see Speed control) .....75
Cupholder(s) .....125
Customer Assistance .....225
Ford Extended Service Plan .....252
Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada .....253
Getting roadside assistance ...225
Getting the service you need .....248
Ordering additional owner's literature .....254
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program .....252

**D**

Daytime running lamps
(see Lamps) .....53
Dipstick
automatic transmission fluid .....295, 297
engine oil .....269
Driving under special conditions .....214, 220, 222
sand .....221
snow and ice .....223
through water .....221, 224

**E**

Electronic message center .....85
Emergencies, roadside
jump-starting .....240
Emission control system .....291
Engine .....306
cleaning .....258
coolant .....276
fail-safe cooling .....281
idle speed control .....274
lubrication specifications .....303
refill capacities .....303

service points .....266–267
starting after a collision .....227
Engine block heater .....200
Engine oil .....269
change oil soon warning, message center .....269
checking and adding .....269
dipstick .....269
filter, specifications .....273, 302
recommendations .....273
refill capacities .....303
specifications .....303
Event data recording .....6
Exhaust fumes .....200

**F**

Fail safe cooling .....281
Fluid capacities .....303
Foglamps .....53
Four-Wheel Drive vehicles
driving off road .....219
Fuel .....283
calculating fuel economy .....87, 287
cap .....285
capacity .....303
choosing the right fuel .....286
comparisons with EPA fuel economy estimates .....290
detergent in fuel .....287
filling your vehicle with fuel .....283, 285, 288
filter, specifications .....282, 302
fuel pump shut-off switch .....227
improving fuel economy .....287
octane rating .....286, 306
quality .....286
running out of fuel .....287
safety information relating to automotive fuels .....283
Fuel pump shut-off switch .....227
Fuses .....227–228

**G**

Gas cap (see Fuel cap) .....285
Gas mileage
(see Fuel economy) .....287
Gauges .....14

**H**

Hazard flashers .....226
Headlamps .....52
aiming .....55
autolamp system .....52
bulb specifications .....58
daytime running lights .....53
flash to pass .....54
high beam .....54
replacing bulbs .....59
turning on and off .....52
Heating
heating and air conditioning system .....44, 46, 48
Homelink wireless control system .....82
Hood .....265
How to get going .....16

**I**

Ignition .....197, 306
Illuminated visor mirror .....69
Infant seats
(see Safety seats) .....158

# Index


Inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing .....293
Instrument panel .....71
  cleaning .....260
  cluster .....10
  lighting up panel and interior .....54

**J**

Jack .....234
  positioning .....234
  storage .....234
Jump-starting your vehicle .....240

**K**

Keyless entry system .....109
  autolock .....98
  keypad .....109
  locking and unlocking doors ..110
  programming entry code .....109
Keys .....95, 112
  positions of the ignition .....197

**L**

Lamps
  autolamp system .....52
  bulb replacement specifications chart .....58
  daytime running light .....53
  fog lamps .....53
  headlamps .....52
  headlamps, flash to pass .....54
  instrument panel, dimming .....54
  interior lamps .....56
  replacing bulbs .....59
LATCH anchors .....161
Lights, warning and indicator ....10
  anti-lock brakes (ABS) .....203
Load limits .....191
Locks
  autolock .....98
  childproof .....101
  doors .....97
Lubricant specifications .....303
Lug nuts .....239
Lumbar support, seats .....119

**M**

Manual transmission .....215
  fluid capacities .....303
  lubricant specifications .....303
  reverse .....216
Message center .....85–86
  english/metric button .....91
  system check button .....90
  warning messages .....92
Mirrors .....74–75
  automatic dimming rearview mirror .....74
  heated .....75
  side view mirrors (power) .....75
Moon roof .....80
Motorcraft parts .....263, 282, 302

**N**

Navigation system .....43

**O**

Octane rating .....286
Oil (see Engine oil) .....269

**P**

Parking brake .....203

Parts (see Motorcraft parts) ....302
Passenger Occupant Classification Sensor .....127
Power distribution box (see Fuses) .....231
Power door locks .....97
Power mirrors .....75
Power point .....71
Power steering .....209–210
  fluid, checking and adding ....294
  fluid, refill capacity .....303
  fluid, specifications .....303
Power Windows .....72

**R**

Radio .....16, 20, 28
Recommendations for attaching safety restraints for children .....156
Relays .....227
Remote entry system .....103–104
  illuminated entry .....107–108
  locking/unlocking doors .....104–105
  opening the trunk .....105
  panic alarm .....105
  replacement/additional transmitters .....106
  replacing the batteries .....105
Reverse sensing system .....217
Roadside assistance .....225

**S**

Safety belts (see Safety restraints) .....125, 129–133
Safety Canopy .....148
Safety defects, reporting ..254–255
Safety restraints .....125, 129–133
  Belt-Minder® .....134
  extension assembly .....133
  for adults .....130–132
  for children .....154
  Occupant Classification Sensor .....127
  warning light and chime .....133–134
Safety restraints - LATCH anchors .....161
Safety seats for children .....158
Safety Compliance Certification Label .....307
Satellite Radio Information .....41
Seats .....116
  child safety seats .....158
  front seats .....119
  heated .....48, 122
SecuriLock passive anti-theft system .....110
Servicing your vehicle .....264
Setting the clock
  AM/FM/CD .....22
  AM/FM/In-dash 6 CD .....30
Side air curtain .....151
Spark plugs, specifications .....302, 306
Specification chart, lubricants .....303
Speed control .....75
Starting your vehicle .....197–198, 200
  jump starting .....240
Steering
  speed sensitive .....210

Steering wheel
controls ....78
tilting ....69
SYNC ....43

**T**

Tilt steering wheel ....69
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)
Tires, Wheels and Loading ....185
Tires ....170–171, 234
alignment ....178
care ....174
changing ....234
checking the pressure ....174
inflating ....172
label ....184
replacing ....176
rotating ....178
safety practices ....177
sidewall information ....179
snow tires and chains ....190
spare tire ....234
terminology ....171
tire grades ....171
treadwear ....170, 175
Towing ....195
recreational towing ....195
trailer towing ....195
wrecker ....246
Traction control ....208
Transaxle
fluid, checking and adding (automatic) ....295
fluid, checking and adding (manual) ....299
Transmission ....210
brake-shift interlock (BSI) ....210
fluid, refill capacities ....303
lubricant specifications ....303
manual operation ....215
Trunk ....102
remote release ....94, 105
Turn signal ....56

**U**

USB port ....37

**V**

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) ....307
Vehicle loading ....191
Ventilating your vehicle ....200

**W**

Warning lights (see Lights) ....10
Washer fluid ....268
Water, Driving through ....224
Windows
power ....72
Windshield washer fluid and wipers ....68
checking and adding fluid ....268
replacing wiper blades ....269
Wrecker towing ....246